AL-BAHER

CONNECT

الصف الخامس الابتدائي

First Term



5th Primary

بتصريح و تحت إشراف

MINISTRY OF EDUCATION AND TECHNICAL EDUCATION

2025

Parents' Guide

Contents

Reading and Writing Skills

Reading Skills

مهارات القراءة

How to deal with the "Reading Comprehension" question.

كيف تتعامل مع سؤال قطعة الفهم

قطعة الفهم هي عبارة عن فقرة يقوم الطالب بقراءتها ثم يجيب عن بعض الأسئلة:

أ. **ثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد تقيس مدي فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:**

(تحديد الفكرة العامة في النص - تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص - توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص)

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

- تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص

- This text is about "..................".

Or: The (main idea / general idea) of the text is about "..................".

Or: The text talks about "..................".

- تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص

- The underlined word "..................." has the same meaning as "..................".

Or: The underlined word "..................." is the opposite of the word "..................".

Or: The underlined word "..................." refers to "..................".

Or: The underlined word "..................." means "..................".

- توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص

ب. **سؤالان من الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام تقيس مدي فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:**

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

- تقديم استنتاجات منطقية من النص:

- Infer استنتج - Mention اذكر

- تلخيص التفاصيل والأفكار الداعمة في النص:

- Summarize the main idea of the text.

Writing Skills

مهارات الكتابة

1 How to write a paragraph: كيف تكتب فقرة إنشائية

1. اترك مسافة في بداية السطر الأول تقريبًا ١ سم.
2. ابدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
3. ضع (.) في نهاية كل جملة.
4. اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
5. ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونوّع بدايات الجمل.
6. استخدم الزمن المناسب للموضوع.
7. استخدم جمل بسيطة.
8. حسن خطك واترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.

2 How to write an email: كيف تكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه

Subject : موضوع الرسالة

Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه ,

How are you? I'm happy to write this email to you. ← جملة افتتاحية

.... موضوع الرسالة ....

....

....

....

- Write back soon and tell me your news.
- Best wishes. ← جملة ختامية

Yours,

اسم المرسل

Send A $ Saved

3 How to write a biography: كيفية كتابة سيرة ذاتية:

1. Introduce the person, giving their names. - قم بتقديم الشخص (ذاكرًا اسمه).

- (Name of a person) .... is ....
- He / she was born on + تاريخ الميلاد ....
- He / She began ....

2. Say why they are famous and give details about them.
- اذكر لماذا هم مشهورين واعط تفاصيل عنهم.

- He / She was the first .... to + inf.
- He / She was / is successful because ....
- He / She won ....

3. Give more details about their success and why they are interesting or important. - اعط تفاصيل أكثر عن نجاحهم ولماذا هم مثيرون للاهتمام أو مهمين.

- He / She won ....
- He / She is also .... / Moreover / As well as this, he / she is ....

4. Say what you think could happen next for their career.
- اذكر ما تعتقد أنه سيحدث لهم في حياتهم العملية فيما بعد.

- I think he / she will become the most ....

4 How to write a blog: كيف تكتب مدونة:

1. اكتب تاريخ اليوم عند بداية كتابة المدونة.
2. قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب لموضوع المدونة.
3. صف الأماكن والأحداث التي مرت عليك .
4. صف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.
5. اكتب بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثل (I / Me).
6. استخدم بعض الصور لتوضيح الفكرة.
7. اكتب رأيك في الموضوع الذي تتحدث عنه باستخدام (In my opinion) / (I think that).

Punctuation Marks

علامات الترقيم

Capital letters A B C

الحروف الكبيرة

توضع في بداية الجملة / أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / اللغات / الجنسيات / أسماء الأشخاص / البلدان / الأماكن الشهيرة والضمير (I) والاختصارات.

1. Tom is from the USA.
2. I visited the Egyptian Museum in May.
3. Today is Monday.
4. I am Egyptian and I speak Arabic.

Period (Full Stop)

النقطة



توضع في نهاية الجملة.

1. He is good at football.
2. I don't like fish.

Question Mark

علامة الاستفهام



توضع في نهاية السؤال.

1. Why did you go to the library?
2. Can I have some water, please?

Exclamation Mark

علامة التعجب



توضع في نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التي تعبر عن الترحيب و التعجب

- Hi!
- Wow!

Apostrophe



الفصلة العليا



1. Ahmed's car is black. — توضع مع (s) الملكية.
2. I'd like some apples, please. — توضع في الاختصارات.

Comma

الفاصلة السفلى



1. I am good at football, swimming, and tennis. — توضع عند كتابة قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات
2. Yes, I was. - No, I wasn't. — توضع بعد (Yes / No).
3. I'm great at drawing, but I'm bad at singing. — توضع قبل (but)
4. Can I have some tea, please? — توضع قبل (please) إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة.

LET'S REMEMBER



Social media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي



cell phone
الهاتف المحمول



password
كلمة المرور



do research
يقوم بالبحث



text message
رسالة نصية



Transportation وسائل النقل



metro
مترو



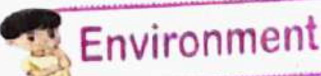
taxi
تاكسي



boat
قارب



tram
ترام





Environment البيئة



drought
جفاف



flood
فيضان



pollution
التلوث

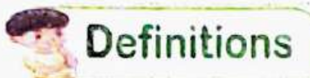


traffic
حركة المرور

Help your child revise these words. ساعد طفلك أن يراجع هذه الكلمات.



Let's remember



Definitions تعريفات

drought	when there isn't enough water
flood	when there is too much water
password	the special code you need to access your computer
traffic	lots of cars on the road
tram	public transportation that runs on lines, but isn't a train
taxi	a car you can ride in the street, which someone else drives
pollution	when there are a lot of harmful chemicals in the air
text message	a small note you write to someone on your cell phone

* Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Your favorite transportation

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child identify these definitions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه التعريفات.

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Form التكوين

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل، وله شكلان:

❶ أفعال منتظمة (Regular verbs) وتتكون بإضافة (d / ed / ied) للفعل.

like يُحب → liked		play يلعب → played	
walk يمشي → walked		study يذاكر → studied	

❷ أفعال غير منتظمة (Irregular verbs).

is يكون → was	have يمتلك → had
swim يسبح → swam	do يفعل → did
see يرى → saw	go يذهب → went

Usage الاستخدام

للتعبير عن فعل بدأ وانتهى في الماضي.

e.g. - I went to the park last Friday.
- They played football yesterday.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday أمس	last (week , month ,...) (الأسبوع، الشهر، ...) الماضي
ago منذ	in the past في الماضي

e.g. - We played tennis yesterday.
- He went to the zoo last week.



Modals الأفعال الناقصة

can + inf. يستطيع

للتعبير عن القدرة على عمل شيء ما في المضارع.

e.g. I can swim.

can't + inf. لا يستطيع

للتعبير عن عدم القدرة على عمل شيء ما في المضارع.

e.g. I can't ride a bike.

should + inf. ينبغي أن

للنصيحة بفعل شيء ما.

e.g. You should get to the train station by 10 am to catch the train.

shouldn't + inf. ينبغي ألا

للنصيحة بعدم فعل شيء ما.

e.g. Wael shouldn't give his password to his friends.

must + inf. يجب أن

للتعبير عن الضرورة لعمل شيء ما.

e.g. We must plant more trees to get fresher air.

mustn't + inf. يجب ألا

للتعبير عن المنع والتحريم.

e.g. You mustn't pollute water.

need to + inf. يجب أن

للتعبير عن الضرورة.

e.g. You need to look right and left before you cross the road.

Help your child revise some modals.

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع بعض الأفعال الناقصة.



Writing

When we write a paragraph, we use some phrases such as:
عندما نكتب فقرة نستخدم بعض العبارات مثل:

Many people think ...	يعتقد كثير من الناس ...
They also say ...	يقولون أيضا ...
But, on the other hand, ...	ولكن، من ناحية أخرى، ...
In general, ... In conclusion ...	عموما، ... ختاما ...
In my opinion ...	في رأيي ...

You are playing a computer game with your friends.

Read about the pros and cons of playing it.

Use the following phrases.

Pros مميزات	Cons مساوئ
lots of fun	waste time
help us think about solutions	some games don't teach us anything
we can learn from some of them	

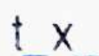
Model paragraph

Many people think playing a computer game makes lots of fun. They also say it helps us think about solutions. But, on the other hand, it wastes time. Some games don't teach us anything. In general, we can learn from some of them. In my opinion it is useful.



Activities

1 Look and complete. انظر وأكمل.




t_x_ | dr_ _ght | m_t_o | b_ _t






pa_ _word | c_ll p_one | t_ _m | tr_ff_c

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. They .... to the cinema yesterday.
   a) go b) went c) going d) goes
2. The movie .... very good.
   a) am b) are c) were d) was
3. We .... plant more trees.
   a) must b) shouldn't c) mustn't d) can't
4. You .... put on a jacket. It's cold.
   a) mustn't b) need c) should d) shouldn't
5. Can you swim? - No, I ....
   a) can b) can't c) mustn't d) shouldn't

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6 I .... English yesterday.
a) study b) studied c) studying d) studies

7 Last night, we .... a party.
a) have b) are c) has d) had

8 You .... put on your seat belt.
a) must b) can c) mustn't d) shouldn't

9 Dina .... swim in the sea.
a) have b) is c) can't d) needs

10 You .... to drink a lot of water.
a) can b) need c) must d) should

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة.

Maged and Lama are brother and sister. They had a nice weekend. They played football together in the park on Friday morning. Then Lama helped her mom to clean the house. And Maged walked with his dad to the supermarket. On Friday evening, Lama went to the cinema with her friend's family and they saw a movie. It was very good. Maged went to the beach along the coast path and swam in the sea with his dad. The following day, they went to the zoo together. They saw lots of interesting animals. In the evening Maged studied for a test and Lama did her homework. It was a lovely weekend!

A) Choose the correct word.

1 .... helped mom to clean the house.
a) Maged b) Lama c) Dad d) Hend

2 It was a .... weekend.
a) lovely b) bad c) terrible d) sad

B) Answer the following questions.

3 Where did they play football? ....

4 Who did Lama go to the cinema with? ....



Unit (1)
We plant our food
نحن نزرع طعامنا
In this unit, the student will ...
في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف ...
. listen, read, research, and write about different types of food.
. listen to a conversation about favorite food.
. practice making suggestions with how about.
. read a fairy tale.
. practice saying vowel sounds.
. understand decimal fractions.
. write a recipe.
. research and make a poster about fruit and vegetables that grow in Egypt.
يتدرب على نطق الأصوات المتحركة
يفهم الكسور العشرية
يكتب وصفة (طهي)



FOOD AND DRINK

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.

Food & Drink
الطعام و الشراب


beans
فول


limes
ليمون حامض (أخضر)


onions
بصل


carrots
جزر


chocolate
شوكولاته


lemons
ليمون (أصفر)


pineapples
أناناس


eggs
بيض


coconuts
جوز هند


mango
مانجو

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Unit (1)



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

healthy	صحي	a little	قليل	a lot	كثير
unhealthy	غير صحي	too	أيضا	potatoes	بطاطس
chickens	دجاج	fresh	طازج	garden	حديقة
favorite	مفضل	pot	إناء / وعاء	uncle	عم / خال

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
love	يحب	loved	collect	يجمع	collected
plant	يزرع	planted	like	يحب	liked
pick	يقطف	picked			

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
think	يعتقد - يفكر	thought	eat	يأكل	ate
have / has	يملك	had	sell	يبيع	sold
grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew	buy	يشتري	bought



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

That's easy!	هذا سهل	in the garden	في الحديقة
at the market	في السوق	It's OK to + مصدر	لا بأس أن ....
on the ground	على الأرض	grow on trees	ينمو على الأشجار

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Dina : What's your favorite food, Farida?

ما هو طعامك المفضل، يا فريدة؟

Fareeda : That's easy! It's chocolate.

هذا أمر سهل! إنها الشوكولاتة.

Dina : Mmm … I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it?

ممم.... أنا أحب الشوكولاتة أيضًا. لكنها ليست صحية، أليس كذلك؟

Fareeda : I think it's OK to eat a little. But yes, it is unhealthy if you eat a lot.

أعتقد أنه لا بأس أن تأكل قليلًا منها. ولكن بالفعل، إنها ليست صحية إذا أكلتِ الكثير منها.

Dina : What's your favorite healthy food?

ما هو طعامك الصحي المفضل؟

Fareeda : Oh, I like chicken and I like fish. But my favorite is mango. We have a mango tree in the garden.

أوه، أنا أحب الدجاج وأحب السمك. لكن المفضل لدي هو المانجو. لدينا شجرة مانجو في الحديقة.

Dina : I love mango too. We don't have a mango tree. We have a lime tree and a lemon tree.

أنا أحب المانجو أيضًا. ليس لدينا شجرة مانجو. لدينا شجرة ليمون أخضر حامض وشجرة ليمون.

Fareeda : My uncle grows onions and potatoes. He has chickens too. He collects fresh eggs every day. Sometimes he sells them at the market.

يزرع عمي البصل والبطاطس ولديه دجاج أيضًا، ويجمع البيض الطازج كل يوم وأحيانًا يبيعه في السوق.

Did you know ?

Pineapples don't grow on trees! They grow on the ground.

لا ينمو الأناناس على الشجر! إنه ينمو على الأرض.







Language Functions



Asking about favorites: السؤال عن الأشياء المفضلة.

What's your favorite + noun (اسم)?

e.g. A: What's your favorite food? B: It's chicken.



Expressing likes: التعبير عن الأشياء التي نحبها.

I like / love + noun (اسم).

e.g. I like fish.

e.g. I love mango.



Expressing opinions: التعبير عن الآراء.

I think ....

e.g. I think it's OK to eat a little chocolate.

Look, follow and notice. انظر وتتبع ولاحظ.

How we grow lemons كيف نزرع الليمون



1 The girl is planting a lemon seed in a pot.



2 The lemon tree is starting to grow.



3 Some flowers are growing.



4 There are lemons on the tree.



5 The girl is picking the lemons.



6 She is making lemonade.

Help your child identify how we grow lemons.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على كيفية زراعة الليمون.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My favorite food is ....
   a) chocolate b) eggs c) beans d) fish
2. It is .... to eat a lot of chocolate.
   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) nice
3. I eat .... chocolate.
   a) a lot b) much c) a little d) many
4. My friend Fareeda likes chicken and ....
   a) meat b) rice c) potatoes d) fish

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I love chocolate, ...
   a) to b) too c) two d) so
2. Chocolate is ...., so I eat a little.
   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) easy
3. We have a mango tree in our ....
   a) garden b) library c) classroom d) bathroom
4. .... give us eggs.
   a) Cows b) Goats c) Chickens d) Cats
5. My uncle sells eggs at the ....
   a) school b) market c) library d) hospital

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

unhealthy - potatoes - healthy - chocolate - kitchen

My name's Hana. I'm in grade five. I like ....(1)................ food. I help my mum in the ....(2)............... We make chickens, beans and ....(3)............... My brother likes to eat chocolate. I like .....(4)..........., too, but I don't eat a lot. At the weekend, we visit our uncle. He grows trees in his garden. He has a lemon and lime tree.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. food - What - favorite - your - is - ?

....

2. a mango - garden - He - in - the - tree - has - .

....

3. in - We - garden - our - mangoes - grow - .

....

4. grows - My - onions - uncle - potatoes - and - .

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ what's your favorite food, fareeda?

....

⇨ my uncle grows onions

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words: Your favorite food

(fish - healthy - delicious)



MY SHOPPING LIST



Key Vocabulary الكلمات الرئيسية

grapes	عنب	pizza	بيتزا	honey	عسل
shopping list	قائمة تسوق	ful medames	فول مدمس	yogurt	زبادي
mahalabia	مهلبية	french fries	بطاطس مقلية		



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

bowl	سلطانية	cookies	كعك محلي	diet	رجيم (نظام غذائي)
unpack	يفرغ الحقيبة	burger	برجر	delicious	لذيذ
cucumbers	خيار	dessert	تحلية / الحلو (بعد الأكل)	nuts	مكسرات
price	ثمن	juicy	كثير العصارة	customer	زبون
cupboard	دولاب / خزانة	fried eggs	بيض مقلي	diaries	يوميات / مذكرات
lucky	محظوظ	boiled eggs	بيض مسلوق	top	قمة
nutrients	العناصر الغذائية	market trader	تاجر في السوق	jam	مربى
shawerma	شاورما	Om Ali	أم علي	healthy	صحي
koshari	كشرى	fruit salad	سلطة فواكه	unhealthy	غير صحي
fridge	ثلاجة	market seller	بائع في السوق	dinner	وجبة عشاء



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

for lunch	لوجبة الغداء	balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن
act out	يمثل / يتصرف	in total	في المجموع الكلي
of course	بالطبع	sensible choices	اختيارات منطقية

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen, read and role-play.

استمع و اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

Narrator: 1

الراوي: 1



Market trader : Lovely tomatoes! Come and buy! How about buying some lovely red tomatoes?

طماطم جميلة! تعال واشترِ! ماذا عن شراء بعض من الطماطم الحمراء الجميلة؟

Mom : Oh, I think we need some tomatoes. How much are they?

أوه! أعتقد أننا بحاجة إلى بعض الطماطم. كم سعرها؟

Market trader : They're a good price: they're only three pounds for one kilogram.

سعرها جيد: فقط ثلاث جنيهات للكيلو الواحد.

Mom : OK. We'll have a kilogram, please.

حسنًا. سنأخذ كيلو جرام، من فضلك.

Market trader : How about buying some carrots, too?

وماذا عن شراء بعض الجزر أيضًا؟

Mom : No, thank you.

لا، شكرًا لك.

Ibrahim : Mom, please can we have a pineapple?

أمي، من فضلك هل يمكننا أن نشترى ثمرة أناناس؟

Mom : Hmm, yes, Ibrahim! Let's buy a nice juicy pineapple.

همممم، نعم، يا إبراهيم! هيا نشترى ثمرة أناناس جيدة وكثيرة العصارة.

Market trader : There you go. That'll be 20 pounds in total, please.

تفضلوا. سيكون إجمالي ذلك عشرون جنيهًا، من فضلك.

Help your child listen, read and role-play.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ ويتبادل الأدوار.

الراوي: ٢

Narrator: 2

Nada : I really like coming to your house, Grandma.
أنا حقًا أحب القدوم إلى منزلك، يا جدتي.

Grandma : I like it when you visit me, Nada.
وأنا أحب زيارتك لي، يا ندى.

Nada : We haven't got a mango tree in our garden at home. We've got a lemon tree. ليس لدينا شجرة مانجو في حديقتنا بالمنزل. لدينا شجرة ليمون.

Grandma : I know. I'm lucky to have one. Would you like to have a mango now?
أنا أعرف. أنا محظوظة لامتلاكي شجرة مانجو. هل ترغبين في الحصول على ثمرة مانجو الآن؟

Nada : Yes, please! I would also like to have your mango and coconut mahalabia later. Have you got any coconut?
نعم، من فضلك! وأود أيضًا أن أتناول المهلبية بالمانجو وجوز الهند التي تعديها لاحقًا. هل لديك أي جوز هند؟

Grandma : Yes, I bought some in the market this morning.
نعم، اشتريت بعضًا منه من السوق هذا الصباح.

الراوي: ٣

Narrator: 3

Mom 2 : Ashraf, will you come to the market with me?
يا أشرف، هل تأتي معي إلى السوق؟

Ashraf : Yes, of course. What do we need to buy?
نعم، بالطبع. ما الذي نحتاج أن نشتريه؟

Mom 2 : We need to buy bread and rice. What would you like for lunch on Saturday? Uncle Faisal is coming.
نحتاج أن نشتري خبزًا وأرزًا. ماذا تريد أن تتناول على الغداء يوم السبت؟ العم فيصل قادم.

Ashraf : Oh, I would like koshari, please. It's my favorite!
أوه، أريد كشري، من فضلك. إنه المفضل لدي!

Mom 2 : OK, are there any onions in the fridge?
حسنًا، هل يوجد أي بصل في الثلاجة؟

Ashraf : No, there aren't. So, we need to buy bread, rice, and onions.
لا، لا يوجد. إذن نحن بحاجة لشراء الخبز والأرز والبصل.

Help your child listen, read and role-play.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ ويتبادل الأدوار.

Narrator: 4 — الراوي: ٤

Dad : OK, what do we need to get, Amal?
حسنًا، ما الذي نحتاج أن نشتريه، يا أمل؟

Amal : Mom says three lemons and some eggs.
أمي تقول ثلاث ليمونات وبعض البيض.

Dad : Here are the lemons.
ها هو الليمون.

Amal : The eggs are over there. Oh, and chocolate too!
البيض هناك. آوه والشوكولاتة أيضًا!

Dad : Is it on Mom's list?
هل هي في قائمة الأم؟

Amal : No, it isn't. But can I have some, please?
لا، ليست موجودة. ولكن هل يمكنني الحصول على البعض، من فضلك؟

Dad : OK, but don't eat it until after dinner, Amal!
حسنًا، ولكن لا تأكليها إلا بعد العشاء، يا أمل!

•• Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.









Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.

Listen, read and role-play.

استمع واقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

Mom : Jana, can you help me unpack the bags, please?

جنى، هل يمكنك مساعدتي في تفريغ الحقائب من فضلك؟

Jana : Yes, of course. Oh, good, you bought mangoes at the market. I love mangoes. Oh, and you bought chocolate. Mmm, delicious!

نعم بالطبع. أوه، جيد، أنت اشتريت مانجو من السوق. أنا أحب المانجو. أوه، واشتريت شوكولاتة. لذيذة!

Mom : Put that in the cupboard, please. It's for dessert tomorrow. We only have chocolate on Saturdays - it isn't very healthy.

ضعي ذلك في الخزانة من فضلك. إنه للتحلية غدا. نحن فقط نتناول الشوكولاتة أيام السبت - إنها ليست صحية جدًا.

Jana : OK. Where shall I put the cookies?

حسنا. أين أضع الكعك المحلى؟

Mom : Please put them in the top cupboard. You can have one after school tomorrow, but just one - they aren't very healthy!

من فضلك ضعيها في الخزانة العلوية. يمكنك تناول واحدة بعد المدرسة غدا - ولكن واحدة فقط - فهي ليست صحية جدا.

Jana : OK, I'll put the bananas in the fruit bowl on the table.

حسنا. سأضع الموز في وعاء الفاكهة على الطاولة.

Mom : Thank you. Is the chicken in the fridge? It's for shawerma for lunch today.

شكرا لك. هل الدجاج في الثلاجة؟ إنه من أجل الشاورما على الغداء اليوم.

Jana : Yes, it's there with the carrots. نعم، إنه موجود مع الجزر.

Mom : Thank you, Jana. Do you want Om Ali for dessert tonight? I bought a bag of nuts.

شكرا لك، يا جنى. هل تريدين "أم علي" للتحلية الليلة؟ اشتريت كيسا من المكسرات.

Jana : Yes, please, Mom! That's my favorite!

نعم، من فضلك، يا أمي! إنها المفضلة لدي!

Help your child listen, read and role-play.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ ويتبادل الأدوار.



Read the food diaries. From 1 (healthiest) to 3 (unhealthiest).

اقرأ يوميات الطعام. من 1 (الأكثر صحة) إلى 3 (الأقل صحة).

1

Breakfast: cheese and bread, cucumber, jam
Lunch: chicken, french fries, rice
Dinner: yogurt and honey, cake

2

Breakfast: ful medames and bread, boiled egg, fresh juice
Lunch: koshari, salad, an orange
Dinner: yogurt, fruit salad

3

Breakfast: 2 fried eggs, french fries, cheese
Lunch: burger and french fries
Dinner: pizza



Tip! نصيحة

Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs. تأكد أنك تتناول وجبة غذائية متوازنة لكي يحصل جسمك على العناصر الغذائية التي يحتاجها.



Making suggestions: عمل الاقتراحات

How about + v-ing .....? وماذا عن ....؟

e.g. How about buying some lemons?

Let's + inf. هيا بنا .....

e.g. Let's buy a nice pineapple.

عند قبول الاقتراح نقول:
- Good idea! فكرة جيدة!
- OK. حسنًا.

عند رفض الاقتراح نقول:
- No, thank you. لا، شكرًا لك.
- No, thanks. لا، شكرًا.



Making offers: عمل عروض

Would you like.....? هل تود ...؟

e.g. Would you like some tea? - Yes, please. - No, thank you.

Help your child learn about healthy and unhealthy diets.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الوجبات الصحية وغير الصحية.

Language Focus

Countable & Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء التي تُعد والأسماء التي لا تُعد

Countable nouns الأسماء التي تُعد

- هي الأسماء التي لها مفرد وجمع.
- الاسم المفرد هو الذي يُعد ويمكن أن يسبقه (a / an)

- a banana → bananas
- an egg → eggs

Uncountable nouns الأسماء التي لا تُعد

- هي الأسماء التي ليس لها جمع ولا يمكن عدها.
- الأسماء التي لا تعد لا تسبق بـ (a / an)

- rice
- chocolate
- bread

A / An

- We use "a" with singular countable nouns that begin with a consonant.

نستخدم (a) مع الأسماء المفردة التي تعد و تبدأ بصوت ساكن.

- a mango
- a pineapple
- a banana

- We use "an" with singular countable nouns that begin with a vowel.

نستخدم (an) مع الأسماء المفردة التي تعد و تبدأ بصوت متحرك.

- an onion
- an egg
- an orange

تذكر: الحروف المتحركة هي (a - e - i - o - u)

Help your child use (a, an with nouns).

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم (a, an) مع الأسماء.

some & any

some بعض

- We use "some" with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns in affirmative sentences.

نستخدم (some) مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء التي لا تُعد في الجمل المثبتة.

e.g. - I'd like some apples, please. -I'd like some rice, please.

any أي

- We use "any" with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns in questions and negative sentences.

نستخدم (any) مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة ومع الأسماء التي لا تُعد في الأسئلة و الجمل المنفية.

e.g. - Are there any tomatoes? - We haven't got any milk.

Note:

- **We use "some" in request and offer questions.**

نستخدم (some) في سؤال الطلب والعرض.

e.g. Can I have some grapes? (Request)

Would you like some chocolate? (Offer)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I'd like .... apple, please.
   a) a b) an c) some d) any
2. Do you have .... potatoes?
   a) a b) an c) some d) any

Help your child use (some and any with nouns).

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم (some and any) مع الأسماء

3. Would you like .... carrots?
   a) a   b) an   c) some   d) any
4. We don't have .... onions.
   a) an   b) some   c) any   d) a
5. Can I have .... banana, please?
   a) a   b) an   c) any   d) some
6. Are there .... apples?
   a) some   b) an   c) a   d) any
7. I'd like some ....
   a) orange   b) grape   c) grapes   d) onion
8. We have .... chickens for lunch.
   a) a   b) any   c) an   d) some
9. She has .... juice.
   a) an   b) a   c) some   d) any
10. I would like .... pineapple, please.
   a) an   b) a   c) some   d) any

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. There is .... (any) water on the floor.
2. We want .... (a) tea, please.
3. My aunt needs .... (a) onion.
4. There are .... (an) erasers on the table.
5. There aren't .... (some) apples.
6. I saw .... (some) elephant.
7. Would you like .... (any) tea?
8. I eat .... (some) apple every day.
9. We don't need .... (a) coffee.

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I have .... and fruit salad.
   a) yogurt b) beans c) chips d) rice
2. My mom and I go to the ....
   a) zoo b) market c) library d) school
3. We buy chicken, burger, vegetables and rice for ....
   a) breakfast b) dinner c) lunch d) supper
4. My sister and I always help our mom in the ....
   a) bathroom b) living room c) garden d) kitchen

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. How about .... some tomatoes?
   a) buy b) buying c) buys d) bought
2. Can we have .... pineapple?
   a) a b) an c) any d) some
3. There are .... carrots on the table.
   a) any b) an c) some d) a
4. .... you like a mango?
   a) Should b) Will c) Can d) Would
5. I don't have .... french fries.
   a) a b) any c) an d) some
6. Are there .... apples?
   a) some b) a c) any d) an
7. I'd like .... orange.
   a) a b) an c) any d) some
8. Would you like .... carrot?
   a) a b) some c) any d) an

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

9. I'd like some ....
   a) tomato b) grape c) oranges d) onion
10. We don't have .... pineapples.
   a) a b) an c) any d) some

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Would you like .... (an) oranges?
2. Are there .... (some) bananas?
3. I would like .... (some) apple, please.
4. Is there .... (some) carrots?
5. Is there .... (a) butter?
6. I have .... (an) orange juice.
7. I would like .... (a) rice, please.
8. We don't have .... (an) onions.
9. We need to buy .... (a) bread.
10. Have you got .... (some) coconuts?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. got - We - grapes - any - haven't - .

....

2. about - pineapples - How - buying - some - ?

....

3. you - What - would - like - ?

....

4. I - Can - apple, - have - please - an - ?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ nada wants chocolate for dessert

....



JACK AND THE BEANSTALK



Key Vocabulary الكلمات الرئيسية

beanstalk	ساق الفاصوليا	castle	قلعة	giant	عملاق
chop	يقطع	grab	يجذب / ينتزع	cage	قفص



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

poor	فقير	special	خاص/ مميز	clouds	سُحُب
rich	غني	happily	بسعادة	coins	عملات معدنية
angry	غاضب	free	حُر	price	سعر
hungry	جوعان	top	قمة	axe	بلطة - فأس



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
climb	يتسلق	climbed	meet	يقابل	met
count	يعد	counted	make	يصنع	made
talk	يتكلم	talked	say	يقول	said
save	ينقذ	saved	throw	يرمي/يقذف	threw
reach	يصل	reached	think	يعتقد	thought
stay	يقيم	stayed	go	يذهب	went
cry	يبكي / يصيح	cried	fall	يقع/ يسقط	fell
grab	يجذب / ينتزع	grabbed	run away	يهرب	ran away



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the way to	في الطريق إلى	a magic hen	دجاجة سحرية
go up	يصعد لأعلى	a kind boy	ولد طيب

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

a golden egg	بيضة ذهبية	at last	أخيرًا - في النهاية
ever after	منذ ذلك الحين	stay with	يبقى مع
throw out of	يرمي من	thank you for	شكرًا لك على
as soon as	بمجرد أن	next to	بجوار

Definitions تعريفات

giant	a very, very big person
grab	to pick something up quickly
castle	a very large building built a long time ago
chop	to cut something down
cage	a box in which we keep animals

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Jack and the Beanstalk جاك وساق الفاصوليا

1



Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow,"said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!"

كان جاك وأمه فقيرين جدًا. قالت الأم لجاك " اذهب إلى السوق وقم ببيع آخر بقرة لدينا. من فضلك بعها بسعر جيد، يا جاك!"

Help your child listen and read the fairy tale.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصة الخرافية (الخيالية).

2



On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans. Do you want to buy them? They will make you rich!" said the man.

وفي الطريق إلى السوق، قابل جاك رجلا عجوزا. قال الرجل العجوز " لدى حبات فاصوليا مميزة. هل تريد أن تشتريها؟ ستجعلك غنيًا!"

3



Jack bought the beans. But his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans!" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry, Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.

اشترى جاك الحبوب. لكن كانت أمه غاضبة جدًا. وقالت " نحن نحتاج طعامًا يا جاك وليس حبات فاصوليا! وألقتهم الأم من النافذة " قال جاك" آسف يا أمي. اعتقدت أنها ستساعدنا". ذهب جاك إلى فراشه وهو حزين وجوعان جدًا.

4



The next morning, Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden. It went all the way up to the clouds. Jack climbed the beanstalk. At the very top, he saw a castle. Jack went inside to see if anyone needed help.

وفي الصباح التالي رأى جاك ساق فاصوليا طويل جدًا في الحديقة. كانت مرتفعة إلى السحاب. تسلق جاك ساق الفاصوليا. وفي القمة رأى قلعة. دخل جاك القلعة ليرى ما إذا كان هناك أحد يحتاج إلى المساعدة.

5



Suddenly, Jack saw a very big giant. He was counting bags of gold coins. There was a hen on the floor. The hen was in a cage. Next to the hen were some golden eggs.

وفجأة رأى جاك عملاقًا ضخمًا. وكان يعد أكياسًا بها عملات ذهبية. وكان هناك دجاجة على الأرضية. وكانت الدجاجة داخل قفص وبجوار الدجاجة بعض البيض الذهبي.

Help your child listen and read the fairy tale.
ساعد طفلك ان يستمع ويقرأ القصة الخرافية (الخيالية).



The hen looked very sad. It was a magic hen, and it could talk! "Help me, please," cried the hen. "Save me from this terrible giant!" "I'll help you!" said Jack.

بدت الدجاجة حزينة جدًا. كانت دجاجة سحرية، وكانت تستطيع أن تتكلم. وصرخت الدجاجة "ساعدني من فضلك. أنقذني من هذا العملاق المخيف!" قال لها جاك "سأساعدك".



As soon as Jack reached his garden, he grabbed his axe. He chopped down the beanstalk. The giant fell on the ground and ran away. The hen was happy! It was free at last!

بمجرد أن وصل جاك لحديقته جذب فأسه وقام بقطع ساق الفاصوليا. وسقط العملاق على الأرض وفر هاربًا. كانت الدجاجة سعيدة! ونالت حريتها أخيرًا.



"Thank you for helping me, Jack. You are a kind boy. Can I please stay with you and your mother?" Jack and his mother weren't poor anymore. They sold the golden eggs to buy food. Jack and his mother lived happily ever after.

قالت الدجاجة " شكرًا على مساعدتك يا جاك. أنت ولد طيب. من فضلك هل يمكنني أن أقيم معك أنت ووالدتك؟" لم يعد جاك وأمه فقراء. وقاما ببيع البيض الذهبي لشراء الطعام. وعاش جاك وأمه في سعادة دائمة.

Think and discuss with your partner.

فكر وتناقش مع زميلك.

- Did you like the story? Why? Why not?

I liked the story because it's interesting.

I didn't like the story because it's boring.

Help your child listen and read the fairy tale.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ القصة الخرافية (الخيالية).

Vowel sounds الأصوات المتحركة

short vowels

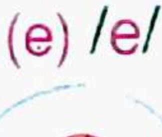
(a) /æ/





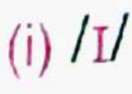
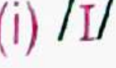
candy mango

(e) /e/


egg

(i) /ɪ/


milk fish

long vowels

(a-e) /eɪ/





cake bake grapes

(ea) /iː/




bean meat

(i-e) /aɪ/




rice lime

Some words sound the same but have different spellings.

بعض الكلمات لها نفس النطق الصوتي ولكن الهجاء مختلف.

a-e /eɪ/	ai /eɪ/		ay /eɪ/	
cake	rain	tail	gray	play
snake	snail	pain	stay	say

Help your child identify these vowel sounds.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الأصوات المتحركة.

MATH

Decimal fractions الكسور العشرية

A fraction: is a part of whole.

الكسر: هو جزء من الواحد الصحيح.

$$\frac{1}{6}$$

1 → numerator — البسط (جزء من الكل)

6 → denominator — المقام (كل شيء)

In decimal fractions, the numerator is divided by the denominator.

في الكسور العشرية تتم قسمة البسط على المقام.

$\frac{1}{3} = 1 \div 3 = 0.333$ $\frac{2}{5} = 2 \div 5 = 0.4$

Did you know ? $0.4 = 0.40 = 0.400$



انظر وقُل.

$\frac{1}{5} = 0.20$

$\frac{1}{4} = 0.25$



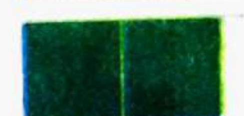
$\frac{1}{3} = 0.333$



$\frac{1}{2} = 0.50$



$\frac{2}{5} = 0.40$



Help your child learn decimal fraction.
ساعد طفلك ان يتعلم الكسور العشرية.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Jack was a .... boy.
   a) bad b) kind c) naughty d) foolish
2. Jack met a/an .... man.
   a) young b) old c) good d) sick
3. Jack found that the beans grew into a .... stalk.
   a) small b) tiny c) giant d) little
4. Jack climbed the stalk and found a hen in a ....
   a) tent b) farm c) box d) cage

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We buy and sell things at the ....
   a) market b) hospital c) club d) library
2. A .... is a very large building.
   a) cage b) castle c) tent d) coin
3. I lost my cell phone so my father was ....
   a) angry b) happy c) kind d) giant
4. To cut something means to .... it.
   a) get b) boil c) mix d) chop
5. They can eat ....
   a) beans b) cages c) axes d) castles
6. To .... is to pick up something quickly.
   a) chop b) grab c) buy d) play
7. Please, save me from this .... giant.
   a) cute b) terrible c) small d) little

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow," said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!" On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans. Do you want to buy them? They will make you rich!" said the man. Jack bought the beans. But his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans!" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry, Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Jack and his mother were very ....
   a) rich b) poor c) strong d) tall
2. Jack bought the ....
   a) rice b) wheat c) beans d) corn

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Who met Jack on the way to the market? ....
4. How was Jack when he went to the bed? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. for - me - Thank - helping - you - .

....

2. eggs - They - sold - to buy - the - food - golden - .

....

3. chopped - Jack - beanstalk - the - down - .

....

4. want - buy - beans - Do - to - you - these - ?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ jack went to the market to sell the cow

....



WRITING & PROJECT

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



weigh out
يزن



bake
يخبز



pour
يصب



mix
يخلط



cut
يقطع



boil
يغلي



Key Vocabulary

الكلمات الرئيسية

sugar	سكر	yogurt	زبادي
coconut	جوز الهند	almonds	لوز
basbousa	بسبوسة	lentil soup	شوربة عدس
honey	عسل	ful medames	فول مدمس
saucepan	قِدر - إناء	knife	سكينة
oven	فرن	cup	

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

semolina	دقيق سميد	mixture	خليط - مزيج	share	يشارك
melted butter	زبدة مذابة	syrup	شراب - عصير	seller	بائع
baking powder	مسحوق خبز	lemon juice	عصير ليمون	poster	ملصق
cocktail juice	عصير كوكتيل	fruit salad	سلطة فواكه	dishes	أطباق
classmate	زميل الدراسة	recipes	وصفات الطعام	diamond	ماسه

tsp = teaspoon ملعقة صغيرة

tbsp = tablespoon ملعقة كبيرة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
cook	يطبخ	cooked	need	يحتاج	needed
bake	يخبز	baked	talk	يتحدث	talked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
make	يصنع	made	draw	يرسم	drew
find	يجد	found	tell	يخبر	told
think	يفكر - يعتقد	thought	learn	يتعلم	learnt

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

turn on	يُشغّل	mix ingredients	يخلط المقادير
for 30 minutes	لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة	look pretty	يبدو جميلًا
find out	يكتشف - يعرف	such as	مثل
take out	يخرج	pour into	يصب في
share with	يتشارك مع	boil.....for	يغلى...لمدة

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

INGREDIENTS المقادير	
2	cups semolina
1	cup yogurt
$\frac{1}{3}$	cup sugar
$\frac{1}{2}$	cup melted butter
1	tsp baking powder
1	cup coconut
	almonds
	Syrup
$\frac{3}{4}$	cup water
2	tbsp honey





My favorite recipe وصفتي المفضلة

We cook lots of different things, such as lentil soup, ful medames and molokhia. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. This is how you make it.

نحن نطهو كثير من الأشياء المختلفة مثل شوربة العدس والفول المدمس والملوخية. الشيء المفضل لدي هو أن أخبز البسبوسة. وهذه هي طريقة عملها.

First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then weigh out the ingredients. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this! Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish.

أولاً تحتاج إلى تشغيل الفرن لتسخينه. ثم زن المقادير ثم اخلط السميد وجوز الهند والسكر والزبدة المذابة. ينبغي عليك أن تخلط هذه المكونات باليد. أنا أحب عمل هذا! ثم تضيف الزبادي وتصب الخليط في طبق الخبيز.

You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa. Put an almond on each diamond. It looks really pretty. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

يمكنك استخدام سكينة لعمل أشكال ماسية فوق البسبوسة. ضع حبة لوز على كل شكل معين (ماسة). إنها تبدو جميلة حقًا. اخبز البسبوسة في الفرن لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة.

Make the syrup. Put the honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan. Boil the mixture for about 10 minutes.

قم بعمل الشربات. ضع العسل والماء وعصير الليمون في القدر. اغلي الخليط لمدة عشر دقائق.

Take it out of the oven. Then pour the syrup over the basbousa. Cut the basbousa and share it with your family!

على البسبوسة. ثم بتقطيع البسبوسة وتشاركها مع عائلتك!

Project

A Poster About Mango

ملصق عن المانجو

Mangoes grow in Egypt. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with

تزرع المانجو في مصر. يمكننا صنع الكثير من المشروبات والأطباق بها.

We can make delicious mango juice or cocktail juice. We can also make a fruit salad and a mango cake.

يمكننا عمل عصير مانجو لذيذ أو عصير كوكتيل كما يمكننا أيضا عمل سلطة فواكه وكعكة المانجو.



Research a fruit or vegetable that grows in E... and how it grows. Find out wh...

1. What d...

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We cook lots of things such as lentil ....
   a) soup b) soap c) wood d) mango
2. Turn .... the oven to get it hot.
   a) off b) down c) out d) on
3. .... the mixture into a baking dish.
   a) Poor b) Weight c) Pour d) Hit
4. Mangoes .... in Egypt.
   a) sleep b) grow c) fly d) make

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

syrup - semolina - basbousa - oven - pour

My favorite recipe to cook is basbousa. It is very easy to make. First, turn your ....(1).......... on to get it hot. Then you mix the ....(2).........., coconut, sugar, and melted butter. Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish. Bake the basbousa in the oven. To make the ....(3).........., put the honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan and boil the mixture. Then ....(4).......... the syrup over the basbousa.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. basbousa - My - is - to - thing - bake - favorite - .

....

2. the basbousa - the oven - for - Bake - in - minutes - 30 - .

....

3. dishes - can - What - you - make - mangoes - with - ?

....

Help your child deal with such questions

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

We cook lots of different things. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. This is how you make it. First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then weigh out the ingredients. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this! Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish. You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa. Bake the basbousa in the oven.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. My favorite thing to bake is ....
   a) potatoes b) cake c) basbousa d) bread
2. You need to turn your .... on to get it hot.
   a) oven b) knife c) spoon d) pot

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the general idea of the text?
   ....
4. What can you use to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa? ....

5 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Mangoes

Guiding words:
(favorite - grow - drinks - juice - salad - delicious)

....
....
....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ you can use a knife to make diamond shapes
....

Review on Unit (1)





cake | candy | chocolate






oconuts | eggs | grapes | lemons








limes | mangoes | onions | pineapple





carrots | rice



castle | giant

Language

A / An

نستخدم (a / an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يُعد.

- a carrot
- an orange

some & any

نستخدم (any / some) مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة.

- some milk
- any water

نستخدم (some) في الإثبات وحالة العرض والطلب.

- I have some apples.
- Can I have some oranges?
- Would you like some ice cream?

نستخدم (any) في حالة النفي والاستفهام.

- I don't have any sugar.
- Do you have any rice?

We plant our food

Phonics

/ eɪ /

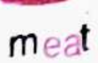




cake | grapes

/ iː /



bean | meat

/ aɪ /







rice | lime

/ eɪ /



play | say

/ æ /



candy

/ ɪ /





milk | fish

Decimal fractions

$\frac{1}{5} = 1 \div 5 = 0.20$

$\frac{1}{4} = 1 \div 4 = 0.25$

$\frac{1}{3} = 1 \div 3 = 0.333$



Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

My favorite food

My favorite food is fish. It's a delicious meal. Fish is healthy. I always eat it with rice and salad. My mother always cooks it to me. She buys it at the market. I like fish a lot.

Healthy and unhealthy food

It's important to eat healthy food. Fruit and vegetables are healthy. I always eat healthy food. It makes my body healthy. I don't like unhealthy food. It makes my body unhealthy and weak. We should make sure we eat a balanced diet so our bodies get the nutrients they need.

Mangoes

Mangoes grow in Egypt. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with it. We can make delicious mango juice. We can also make a fruit salad and a mango cake.

My favorite recipe

My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. We mix the semolina, coconut, sugar and melted butter. Then we add the yogurt. We put almonds on top of it. We bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

Dictation on Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning
....	فول
....	جزر
....	شوكولاتة
....	بيض
....	جوز الهند

Word	Meaning
....	ليمون
....	عنب
....	بصل
....	أناناس
....	مفضل

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning
....	عنب
....	عسل
....	قائمة تسوق
....	مهلبية (نوع من الطعام حلو المذاق)
....	شاورما
....	بيض مسلوق

Word	Meaning
....	بيتزا
....	فول مدمس
....	زبادي
....	بطاطس مقلية
....	ساندوتش برجر
....	كشري

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning
....	ساق الفاصوليا
....	يقطع
....	يجذب / ينتزع

Word	Meaning
....	عملاق
....	قلعة
....	قفص

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning
....	يغلي
....	يضيف
....	يخلط
....	يزن

Word	Meaning
....	يصب
....	يخبز
....	مكونات
....	وصفة أكل

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (1)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My favorite food is ....
   a) mango b) fish c) meat d) rice
2. Mango is a .... food.
   a) unhealthy b) healthy c) bad d) normal
3. We have a mango tree in the ....
   a) zoo b) classroom c) garden d) library
4. My father sometimes sells mangoes at the ....
   a) zoo b) school c) library d) market

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My uncle .... eggs and sells them at the market.
   a) eats b) collects c) breaks d) runs
2. A farmer .... vegetables and fruits.
   a) grows b) throws c) writes d) reads
3. We buy and sell fruits and vegetables at the ....
   a) zoo b) home c) club d) market
4. A .... is a box in which we keep animals.
   a) kitchen b) cage c) castle d) giant

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

garden - market - koshari - easy - lentils

We cook lots of things. My favorite thing is ....(1).......... I buy the ingredients at the ....(2).......... . I use ....(3).......... and rice to make it. It is a very delicious dish. It is not ....(4).......... to cook it. My mom helps me make it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Ali. I'm in grade five. I always get up at six o'clock. I have breakfast with my family. I have ful medames, bread, boiled eggs and fresh juice. In the afternoon my mom and I go to the market. We buy fruit and vegetables. My sister and I always help our mom in the kitchen.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Ali has .... for breakfast
   a) burger b) french fries c) ful medames d) cheese
2. Ali is in grade ....
   a) five b) six c) seven d) four

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does Ali go in the afternoon? ....
4. What do Ali and his mom buy at the market? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. cook - We - of - things - different - lots - .
....
2. like - to - What - you - would - drink - ?
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Do you have .... (some) carrots?
2. Would you like .... (any) bananas?

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

- mangoes grow in egypt.

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words: My favorite food

(favorite - fish - healthy - delicious)

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

grapes - Would - How about - some

Seller : Hello. 1) .... you like some bananas?
Mona : No, thank you. I would like some 2) ....
Seller : 3) .... buying some carrots?
Mona : Yes, please!
Seller : How about buying some oranges?
Mona : No, thank you. I would like 4) .... apples.

Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

please - carrots - any - about

Mona : I would like some 1) .... , please.
Esraa : Are there 2) .... , tomatoes?
Mona : Yes, look! There are.
Esraa : How 3) .... buying some lemons?
Mona : Yes, 4) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I would like .... eggs, please.
   a) some b) a c) an d) any
2. Are there .... carrots?
   a) a b) some c) any d) an
3. We buy food at the ....
   a) market b) school c) office d) zoo
4. I would like .... orange, please.
   a) a b) an c) any d) some
5. A .... is a very large building built a long time age.
   a) cage b) box c) room d) castle


Unit (2)
I want to be healthy!
!أريد أن أكون بصحة جيدة
In this unit the student will ...
في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف....
• listen, read, research, and write about sports.
يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الألعاب الرياضية.
• talk about sports he/she is good or bad at.
يتحدث عن الألعاب الرياضية التي يُجيدها والتي لا يُجيدها.
• read and listen to a science fiction story.
يقرأ ويستمع إلى قصة خيال علمي.
• learn how to say single-syllable words.
يتعلم كيف ينطق الكلمات ذات المقطع الواحد.
• write a biography about a famous Egyptian sports person.
يكتب سيرة ذاتية عن شخص رياضي مصري مشهور.
• give a presentation about how to help his/her local environment.
يقدم عرض عن كيفية مساعدة بيئته المحلية.



SPORTS



Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



karate
الكاراتيه



squash
الاسكواش



sailing
الإبحار



kung fu
كونغ فو



Sports
الألعاب الرياضية



tennis
التنس



football
كرة القدم



swimming
السباحة





handball
كرة اليد

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

popular	شعبي / مشهور	bad	سيء	agree	
club	نادي	worse	أسوأ	match	
later	فيما بعد / لاحقًا	good	جيد	like	
awesome	رائع	better	أفضل	favorite	
bubble	فقاعة	great	عظيم	game	



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
watch	يشاهد	watched	love	يحب	loved
agree	يوافق	agreed	look	يبدو	looked
want	يريد	wanted	try	يجرب	tried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
win	يفوز	won	know	يعرف	knew
go	يذهب	went	see	يرى	saw



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It's great!	إنه لشيء رائع!	So do I.	وأنا كذلك (أيضًا).
bad at + (v+ing) / (noun)	سيء في	look fun	يبدو ممتعًا
good at + (v+ing) / (noun)	جيد في	Me too!	وأنا أيضًا!

Did you know ?

This is bubble football. There are lots of unusual sports you can try. They're fun, and they can keep you healthy!



هذه كرة القدم الفقاعية. هناك الكثير من الرياضات غير العادية التي يمكنك تجربتها. إنها ممتعة، وتمكنك من الحفاظ على صحتك!

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Seleem	What are you watching?	ماذا تشاهد؟
Wael	An old match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini – it's great. I love squash!	مباراة قديمة بين رنيم الوليلي ونور الشربيني- إنه شئ رائع - أنا أحب الاسكواش.
Seleem	Me too! Who's winning?	وأنا أيضًا! من الفائز؟
Wael	Raneem – she's very good at playing squash.	رنيم- إنها ماهرة جدًا في لعب الاسكواش.
Seleem	I know. What sport are you good at?	أنا أعرف. ما الرياضة التي تجيدها أنت؟
Wael	I'm very good at playing tennis, but I'm bad at playing handball. What about you?	أنا جيد جدًا في لعب التنس، ولكنني سيئ في لعب كرة اليد. وماذا عنك؟
Seleem	I'm good at playing squash, but I'm bad at playing tennis. I love football too.	أنا جيد في لعب الاسكواش، ولكنني سيئ في لعب التنس. أحب كرة القدم أيضًا.
Wael	So do I, but I'm better at tennis than I am at football. Let's go and play a game of football.	وأنا كذلك. ولكنني أفضل في التنس أكثر من كرة القدم. هيا نذهب ونلعب مباراة كرة قدم.
Seleem	Yes, let's go to the club later.	نعم، لنذهب إلى النادي لاحقًا.
Wael	Yes! And what other sports do you watch on TV?	نعم! وما هي الرياضات الأخرى التي تشاهدها في التليفزيون؟
Seleem	I love watching karate and kung fu. And you?	أحب مشاهدة الكاراتيه والكونغ فو. وأنت؟
Wael	My favorites are swimming and sailing. Sailing looks fun!	المفضلة لدي هي السباحة والإبحار. الإبحار يبدو ممتعًا.
Seleem	Great! So what time do you want to play football?	رائع! في أي وقت تريد لعب كرة القدم؟
Wael	About five?	حوالي الساعة الخامسة؟
Seleem	Awesome – see you in the club later!	رائع- أراك في النادي لاحقًا!

Help your child listen and read the dialog.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الحوار ويقرأه.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Anas and Seif are talking about ....
   a) animals b) birds c) sports d) subjects
2. Anas loves ....
   a) squash b) tennis c) handball d) basketball
3. Seif is good at playing ....
   a) football b) handball c) basketball d) tennis
4. Seif is bad at playing ....
   a) football b) handball c) basketball d) tennis

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ali is good .... squash.
   a) in b) on c) at d) of
2. We love .... like football, basketball and tennis.
   a) sports b) animals c) food d) drinks
3. Football is the most .... sport in Egypt.
   a) poor b) popular c) bad d) worst
4. I like water sports. I'm good at ....
   a) football b) tennis c) handball d) swimming

Help your child deal with such questio...

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

drinks - squash - famous - bad - sports

Seleem and Wael are friends. They both like ....(1).......... . Wael is very good at playing tennis, but he is ....(2).......... at playing handball. Seleem is good at playing squash, but he is bad at playing tennis. Seleem is watching an old ....(3).......... match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini. Raneem is an Egyptian player and she is one of the most ....(4).......... squash players in the world.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. playing - I'm - bad - at - tennis - .

....

2. watching - karate - I - love - kung fu - and - .

....

3. time - football - want to - What - do - play - you - ?

....

4. good - at - sport - you - What - are - ?

....

5 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words: Your favorite sport

(football - club - friends - Friday)

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ she's very good at swimming

....

Lesson (1 / B) AN AWFUL NIGHTMARE!



Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

shade	ظل	emissions	انبعاثات	greenhouses	صوبات زراعية
nightmare	كابوس	toxic	سام	breathing	التنفس



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

grass	حشائش	plastic	بلاستيك	dirty	قذر / غير نظيف
air	الهواء	dream	حلم	horrible	فظيع
awful	فظيع / مُرَوِّع	planet	كوكب	pollution	تلوث
problems	مشكلات	factory	مصنع	hospital	مستشفى



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

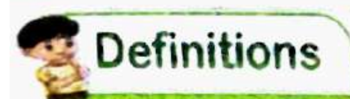
Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present		**Past**	**Present**		**Past**
breathe	يتنفس	breathed	fall	يسقط / يقع	fell
remember	يتذكر	remembered	get	يصبح	got
wait	ينتظر	waited	wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
plant	يزرع	planted	drive	يقود	drove



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

have to	يجب أن	because of	بسبب	too many	كثير جداً (للعدد)
It's time to	حان الوقت لـ	on holiday	في إجازة	too much	كثير جداً (للكمية)
work hard	يعمل بجد	get ready for	يستعد لـ	stay at home	يمكث بالبيت
cut down	يقطع	dangerous for	خطر على	look after	يعتني بـ

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Definitions التعريفات

toxic	very bad to eat or breathe	سام
emissions	gases from cars or factories	انبعاثات
shade	an area which the light of the sun can't reach	ظل
nightmare	a bad dream	كابوس
greenhouse	a glass building used for growing plants	صوبة زراعية
breathe	to move air into and out of your lungs	يتنفس

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



I can't breathe, I know that. The air is black and toxic. There are too many emissions from cars. It's dangerous for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. There are many days when we can't go to school because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to the hospital because of problems with his breathing.

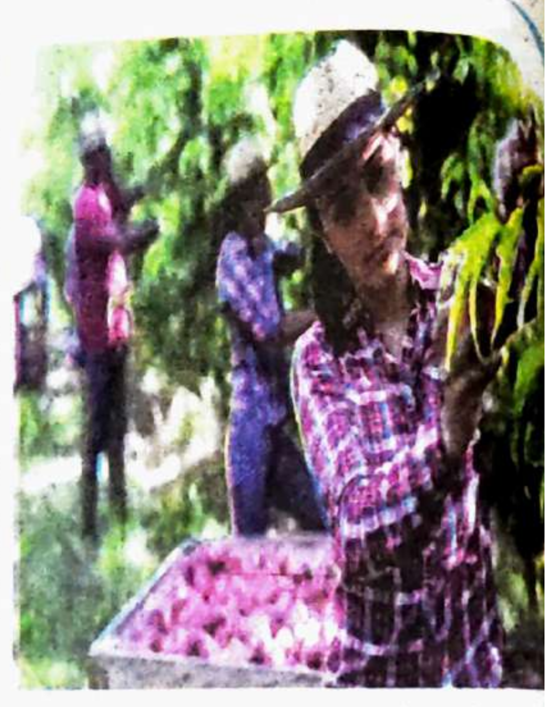
لا أستطيع التنفس، أعرف ذلك. فالهواء أسود وسام. يوجد الكثير من الانبعاثات الناتجة عن السيارات. إنها خطر على رئة الأطفال ونضطر للبقاء في المنزل. هناك العديد من الأيام التي لا يمكننا فيها الذهاب إلى المدرسة لأن الهواء سيء للغاية. اضطر أخي الصغير للذهاب إلى المستشفى بسبب مشاكل في التنفس.



I remember when we could go to the park and play with our friends – the grass was green and the sky was blue. We could even see the sun. Now we can't see the sun any more because the sky is gray or black. I remember going on holiday and playing on the beach with my family. We swam in the sea, but now we can't swim in the sea because there's too much plastic in it and it is dirty.

أتذكر عندما كان بإمكاننا الذهاب إلى الحديقة واللعب مع أصدقائنا - كان العُشب أخضرا والسماء زرقاء. كان بإمكاننا حتى رؤية الشمس. الآن لا يمكننا رؤية الشمس لأن السماء رمادية أو سوداء. أتذكر الذهاب في الأجازة واللعب على الشاطئ مع عائلتي. سبحنا في البحر، لكننا الآن لا نستطيع السباحة في البحر بسبب وجود الكثير من البلاستيك فيه وهو متسخ.

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



Other things I remember are eating fruit from trees and sitting in their shade on hot days. But now they cut down all the trees so we only have fruit from greenhouses and we can't sit outside any more. But wait, what's that? It's my mom calling and it's time to get ready for school! It was all an awful nightmare! I look outside and the sky is blue and I can see the sun.

أشياء أخرى أتذكرها هي اكل الفاكهة من الأشجار والجلوس في ظلالها في الأيام الحارة. لكنهم الآن يقطعون كل الأشجار. لذلك ليس لدينا سوى الفاكهة من الصوبات الزراعية ولا نستطيع الجلوس في الخارج بعد الآن. لكن مهلًا، ما هذا؟ إنها أمي تنادى وحان وقت الاستعداد للمدرسة! كان كل ذلك كابوسًا مروعًا! انظر للخارج والسماء زرقاء واستطيع رؤية الشمس.



We're going to the park today. But I remember my dream and I know in my heart we need to look after our planet. We can drive our cars less, use our bikes more, plant trees, and keep our sea clean, but we must work hard at this!

سنذهب إلى الحديقة اليوم. لكن أتذكر حُلمي وأعرف بكل تأكيد أننا نحتاج إلى الاعتناء بكوكبنا. يمكننا أن نقود سياراتنا بشكل أقل ونستخدم دراجاتنا أكثر ونزرع أشجارًا، ونحافظ على نظافة بحرنا، لكن يجب أن نعمل جاهدين على ذلك!

According to the writer's nightmare, answer the following questions:

1. Why can't the writer breathe?

....

2. What happened to the writer's brother?

....

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

good - breathing - toxic - dangerous - emissions

I can't breathe, I know that. The air is black and ....(1).............. . There are too many ....(2).............. from cars. It's ....(3).............. for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. My brother had to go to the hospital because of problems with his ......(4)........... .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I had a bad dream; it was a ....
   a) greenhouse b) nightmare c) shade d) planet
2. Gases from cars or factories are called ....
   a) nightmares b) greenhouses c) shares d) emissions
3. We should .... our planet.
   a) look after b) breathe c) make d) swim
4. My little brother went to the .... because of problems with his breathing.
   a) school b) cinema c) hospital d) post office
5. We can't go to school because the air is ....
   a) healthy b) fresh c) toxic d) clean
6. It's too hot so I'm sitting in the ....
   a) shade b) rain c) desert d) sun

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Pollution is very dangerous to our world. Pollution comes from emissions from cars. Emissions make the air black and toxic. It's bad for children's lungs. Children go to hospitals because of problems with breathing. Pollution comes from plastic in the sea. We can't swim any more. We cut down the tress and so we don't have fruits or shade to sit in. To stop pollution, we need to look after our planet. We need to drive fewer cars, plant more trees, and use more bikes.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The general idea of the text is about ....
   a) water b) food c) pollution d) sports
2. The underlined word "dangerous" is the opposite of ....
   a) safe b) far c) tall d) fast

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Where does pollution com from? ....
4. How can we stop pollution? ....

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. from - are - There - many - emissions - cars - too - .

....

2. go - park - the - play - to - I - to - .

....

3. need - after - to - We - our planet - look - .

....

5 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words: Air pollution

(emissions - hospitals - breathing)

Lesson (2) I'M GOOD AT ...



Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

poem	قصيدة	team	فريق
French	اللغة الفرنسية	table tennis	تنس الطاولة
drawing	الرسم	chess	شطرنج
across the desert	عبر الصحراء	on your own	بمفردك / بنفسك



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
climb	يتسلق	climbed
jump	يقفز	jumped
tidy	ينظم / يرتب	tidied
practice	يتدرب	practiced

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
speak	يتحدث	spoke
write	يكتب	wrote
make	يصنع	made
draw	يرسم	drew

- Study the following.

do		play	
do karate	يلعب كاراتيه	play football	يلعب كرة القدم
do kung fu	يلعب كونغ فو	play chess	يلعب الشطرنج
do taekwondo	يلعب تايكوندو	play tennis	يلعب التنس
do jigsaws	يلعب الصور المتقطعة	play handball	يلعب كرة اليد
do math	يحل مسائل رياضية	play basketball	يلعب كرة السلة

go			
go swimming	يسبح	go sailing	يبحر



Language Focus

Good at جيد في

- **To talk about things we do or don't do well, we use:**

عندما نتحدث عن الأشياء التي نقوم بها بشكل جيد أو لا نقوم بها بشكل جيد نستخدم :

good at — جيد في
great at — رائع في
bad at — سيئ في

\+ v + ing
\+ noun

- I'm very good at swimming.
- I'm great at football.
- I'm bad at sailing.

Spelling rules

ملاحظات على إضافة (ing) للفعل

1- عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف (e-) غير المنطوق (قبله حرف ساكن) تحذف (e-) قبل إضافة (ing) أما إذا كان حرف (e-) منطوقًا لا تحذف ويضاف (ing).

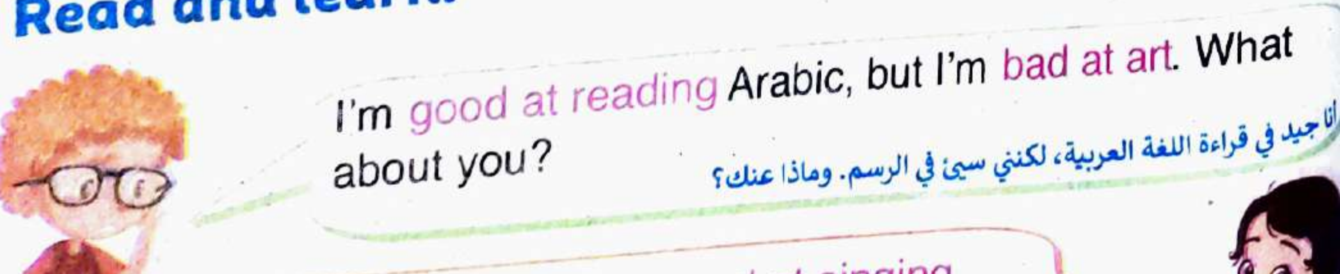
make → making take → taking be → being

2- عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد).

swim → swimming sit → sitting stop → stopping

Read and learn.

اقرأ وتعلم.





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mariam is good at .... football.
   a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
2. Ali is very good at .... poems.
   a) write b) writing c) wrote d) writes
3. Amr is bad at .... French.
   a) speak b) spoke c) speaking d) speaks
4. My children are great at .... their mom in the kitchen.
   a) helped b) help c) helps d) helping
5. I'm good at .... Arabic.
   a) reading b) read c) reads d) is reading
6. Monkeys are good .... climbing trees.
   a) in b) on c) for d) at
7. My sister is bad .... playing the piano.
   a) at b) to c) on d) in
8. The camel is good at .... across the desert.
   a) walked b) walk c) walks d) walking
9. Reem is bad at ....
   a) draw b) drawing c) draws d) is drawing
10. Aser is good at .... tennis.
    a) play b) plays c) played d) playing

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I'm good at .... (play) handball.
2. My sister is very good at .... (write) stories.
3. Omar is bad at .... (speak) Chinese.
4. They're great at .... (help) their dad on the farm.
5. I'm good at .... (make) dinner.
6. Dalia is bad .... (on) playing handball.
7. Salma is great at .... (does) math.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Language Functions

للتحدث عن الألعاب الرياضية.

To talk about favorite sports.

A : Which are your favorite sports to do on your own?
أي الألعاب الرياضية المفضلة لك التي تحب أن تؤديها بنفسك؟

B : I like playing squash on my own.
أحب لعب الاسكواش بمفردي.

A : Which are your favorite sports to do with others or in a team?
ما هي الرياضات التي تفضل ممارستها مع الآخرين أو ضمن فريق؟

B : I like playing football in a team.
أحب لعب كرة القدم في فريق.



A : Which are your favorite sports to watch on TV?
ما هي الرياضة التي تفضل مشاهدتها على شاشة التلفزيون؟

B : Swimming is my favorite sport to watch on TV.
السباحة هي رياضتي المفضلة التي أشاهدها على شاشة التلفزيون.

Note

We use (Why) to ask about reason, and we use (because) to answer and give reasons.

نستخدم (لماذا) لنسأل عن السبب، ونستخدم (لأن) للإجابة وإعطاء الأسباب.

e.g. A: Why are you good at table tennis?
B: I'm good at table tennis because I move fast.



Help your child talk about his favorite sports.
ساعد طفلك أن يتحدث عن رياضاته المفضلة.

Adding and subtracting decimals

جمع وطرح الكسور العشرية

Follow the following steps to add (or subtract) decimal numbers:

أتبع الخطوات التالية لتقوم بجمع أو (طرح) الأرقام العشرية:

١- **تعامل مع الأرقام العشرية مثل الأعداد الصحيحة.**

٢- **ضع الأرقام متتالية بحيث تكون العلامة العشرية لكل منها في نفس المكان.**

٣- **اجمع أو اطرح بداية من اليمين إلى اليسار.**

2,367 + 8,145 =

$$\begin{array}{r} 2.367 \\ +\,8.145 \\ \hline 10.512 \end{array}$$

10,512 - 8,145 =

$$\begin{array}{r} 10.512 \\ -\,8.145 \\ \hline 2.367 \end{array}$$

1 Circle the correct answer.

ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1) 7.983 + 5.432 = (13.415 / 134.15)

2) 9.076 + 8.894 = (1.7970 / 17.970)

3) 60.678 − 50.356 = (103.22 / 10.322)

4) 129.675 − 6.231 = (123.444 / 12.3444)



Help your child add and subtract decimals.

ساعد طفلك أن يجمع ويطرح الأعداد العشرية.

2 Solve the following problems.

حل المسائل الكلامية التالية.

1. If one tree is 3.459 meters tall and another tree is 2.753 meters tall, what is the difference in height between both trees?

لاحظ استخدام كلمة "difference" في المسائل الكلامية التي تعني الفرق بين الأرقام أي أننا نقوم بعملية الطرح.

$$\begin{array}{r} 3.459 \\ -\ 2.753 \\ \hline 0.706 \end{array}$$

2. Jihan ran 3.567 km on Sunday and 5.258 km on Tuesday. What is the total distance that Jihan ran?

لاحظ استخدام كلمة "total" في المسائل الكلامية التي تعني أننا نقوم بعملية الجمع.

$$\begin{array}{r} 3.567 \\ +\ 5.258 \\ \hline 8.825 \end{array}$$

3. Taher bought 2 watermelons. One weighs 2.657 kg and the other weighs 3.205 kg. Find :

   a) the total weight of both watermelons.

   ....

   b) the weight difference between the two watermelons.

   ....

4. Farida swam 100 meters in 2.763 minutes. Zeinab swam 100 meters in 2.341 minutes. Who was faster, Farida or Zeinab? How much faster was she?

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Dalia is good at playing ....
   a) football b) volleyball c) basketball d) tennis
2. Dalia is bad at playing ....
   a) football b) handball c) basketball d) tennis
3. Aser is Dalia's ....
   a) teacher b) father c) uncle d) brother
4. Aser is good at playing ....
   a) handball b) basketball c) tennis d) football

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi, I'm Dalia. I'm eleven years old. I'm in primary five. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball. Aser is my brother. He's good at playing tennis and he is bad at helping me in the kitchen!
My sister's name is Salma. She's good at doing math. She's bad at tidying her room!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "good" is opposite of ....
   a) bad b) great c) well d) nice
2. Aser is good at playing ....
   a) handball b) tennis c) basketball d) karate

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is Aser bad at? ....
4. Mention two things that Dalia is good at. ....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. .... are good at walking across the desert.
   a) Monkeys b) Cats c) Camels d) Donkeys
2. Ali is good at .... tennis.
   a) play b) plays c) played d) playing
3. Monkeys are good .... climbing trees.
   a) in b) to c) on d) at
4. I'm very good at ....
   a) is drawing b) draw c) drawing d) draws
5. I'm bad at .... cakes.
   a) made b) make c) makes d) making

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. you - are - What - at - good - ?

....

2. at - are - Monkeys - good - trees - climbing - .

....

3. is - bad - Sami - at - French - speaking - .

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:



....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



SPORTS PLACES AND EQUIPMENT

Listen and say.

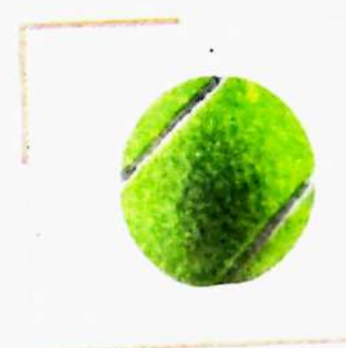
استمع وقل.


football pitch
ملعب كرة قدم


swimming pool
حمام سباحة


tennis court
ملعب تنس


squash rackets
مضارب اسكواش


tennis ball
كرة تنس


karate suit
بدلة كاراتيه


football boots
حذاء كرة القدم


swimming goggles
نظارة سباحة

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

different	مختلف	wall	حائط - سور
racket	مضرب	kick	يركل- يشوط
best	أفضل	way	طريقة
summer	فصل الصيف	fast	سريع
moves	حركات	awesome	رائع
really	حقًا	place	مكان
high kicks	ركلات عالية	rhyme	يتناغم
equipment	معدات		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
kick	يشوط - يركل	kicked
move	يتحرك	moved
practice	يمارس	practiced
use	يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
do/does	يفعل	did
can	يستطيع	could
think	يعتقد	thought
wear	يرتدي / يلبس	wore

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

different moves	حركات مختلفة	do karate	يلعب كاراتيه
do high kicks	يقوم بعمل ركلات عالية	have to	يجب أن
with walls all around	تحيط بها الجدران من كل مكان	go swimming	يسبح - يذهب للسباحة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Listen, point and say.

استمع، أشر وقل:



Football pitch: This is where I play football.

ملعب كرة القدم: هذا هو المكان الذي ألعب فيه كرة القدم.



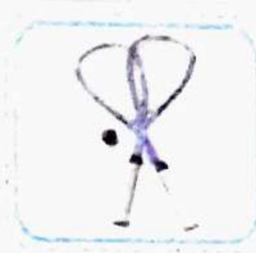
Swimming pool: This is where I go swimming.

حمام السباحة: هذا هو المكان حيث أذهب للسباحة.



Tennis court: This is where I play tennis.

ملعب تنس: هذا هو المكان الذي ألعب فيه التنس.



Squash rackets: This is what I use to play squash.

مضارب الاسكواش: هذا ما أستخدمه لألعب الاسكواش.



Karate suit: This is what I wear to do karate.

بدلة كاراتيه: هذا هو ما أرتديه لممارسة الكاراتيه.



Kung fu: This is when I do high kicks. It rhymes with "you" and "two"

كونغ فو: هذا عندما أفعل الركلات العالية. إنها تتناغم مع نطق "you" و "two".



Swimming goggles: This is what I wear to go swimming.

نظارة سباحة: هذا هو ما أرتديه لممارسة السباحة.



Football boots: This is what I wear to play football.

حذاء كرة القدم: هذا ما أرتديه لألعب كرة القدم.

Help your child read about sports places and equipment.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الأماكن والمعدات الرياضية.

Listen, read and role-play.



I love my sport - kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing.

أنا أحب رياضتي - إن ركل الكرة في الملعب هو الشيء المفضل لدى.



Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me. I feel like a different person.

أفضل شيء بالنسبة لي هو التواجد في المسبح وممارسة هذه الرياضة. أشعر بأنني شخص مختلف.



I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like high kicks best. My suit for this sport is white.

أحب الطريقة التي يمكنني بها القيام بالعديد من الحركات المختلفة. أكثر ما أحب هو الركلات العالية. بدلتي لهذه الرياضة بيضاء.



I love this sport because I'm very good at it. You play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small racket and you move very fast. You get really hot too.

أحب هذه الرياضة لأنني أجيدها. أنت تلعب في ملعب صغير تحيط به الجدران من كل مكان. لديك مضرب صغير وتتحرك بسرعة كبيرة. وتشعر بالحر جدًا أيضًا.



I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have tennis courts in the park and I go there with my friends.

أعتقد أنها رياضة رائعة وأنا أمارسها كثيرًا في الصيف. لديهم ملاعب تنس في الحديقة وأنا أذهب هناك مع أصدقائي.

Help your child listen and read about favorite sports.
ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ عن الرياضات المفضلة.



PRONUNCIATION



How to count sounds in a word.

كيفية عد الأصوات في الكلمة.

- **Break the words into individual sounds to count them.**

قسم الكلمة إلى أصوات حتى تتمكن من عدها.

m a n → man

Some sounds have two letters.

هناك بعض الأصوات تحتوي على حرفين.

When two letter sounds are put together, they can make a new sound.

قد يتحد حرفين معًا فينتج عنهما صوت آخر مختلف.

Letters	Sound	Example
ch	/tʃ/	chair
sh	/ʃ/	dish
th	/θ/	thirsty
th	/ð/	father
ph	/f/	phone
wh	/w/	where
ng	/ŋ/	spring
ck	/k/	kick
ll	/l/	tall

How many sounds are there in....?

k i c k → kick → It has four letters, but it has 3 sounds.

t a l l → tall → It has four letters, but it has 3 sounds.

d i s h → dish → It has four letters, but it has 3 sounds.

Help your child identify these sounds. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الأصوات.



Short and long vowels.

الحروف المتحركة القصيرة والممدودة.

There are five vowels in English: **(a, e, i, o, u)**

Short a /æ/	**Long a /eɪ/**
bat	cake
cat	pain
Short i /ɪ/	**Long i /aɪ/**
dig	bike
fish	night
Short e /e/	**Long e /i:/**
pen	bee
egg	feet
Short o /ɒ/	**Long o /əʊ/**
dog	rose
pot	cone
Short u /ʌ/	**Long u /u:/**
nut	cube
cup	fuel

Listen and tick (✓) the words with long vowel sounds.

استمع وضع (✓) أمام الكلمة ذات الصوت المتحرك الطويل.

1. cry ( )
2. swim ( )
3. bat (
4. so ( )
5. fuel ( )
6. make (
7. cone ( )
8. cube ( )
9. feet (

Help your child identify these sounds.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الأصوات.



Syllables:

المقاطع:

A syllable: is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.

المقطع اللفظي: هو جزء من كلمة تحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد منفرد.

One-syllable words (A single syllable words):

A single syllable word contains one vowel between two ore more consonants.

المقطع اللفظي الواحد : يتكون من صوت واحد متحرك بين صوتين ساكنين أو أكثر.

Words with one syllable كلمات ذات مقطع واحد

doll	دمية	red	لون أحمر
pen	قلم جاف	sock	جورب (شراب)
full	ممتلئ	fish	سمكة
man	رجل	sun	شمس
cat	قطة	neck	رقبة

Words with two syllables كلمات ذات مقطعين

spi-der	عنكبوت	mu-sic	موسيقى
tea-cher	مدرس	ti-ger	نمر
ro-bot	إنسان آلي	E-gypt	مصر
hu-man	إنسان	ba-by	طفل رضيع
pa-per	ورق	win-dow	شباك - نافذة
po-llute	يلوث	fi-nal	نهائي

- Listen and count the syllables.

استمع وعد المقاطع.

1. hotel: .... syllables.
2. spider: .... syllables.
3. red: .... syllable.
4. Egypt: .... syllables.
5. window: .... syllables.
6. sock: .... syllable.
7. racket: .... syllables.
8. egg: .... syllable.

Activities

... الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

...مع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ola loves .... the ball on the pitc...
   a) kicking   b) moving   c) sending   d) throwing
2. Ola wears her football ....
   a) suits   b) boots   c) dress   d) skirt
3. Hana plays ....
   a) football   b) handball   c) tennis   d) basketba...
4. Hana uses the .... and runs fast on the cou...
   a) boots   b) rackets   c) boots   d) suit

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

...الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. When it rained, the football .... was w...
   a) court   b) pitch   c) pool   d) class
2. In karate players wear ....
   a) suits   b) goggles   c) dress   d) shorts
3. We can't practice tennis at school because we don't have a tennis ......
   a) pool   b) water   c) court   d) pitch
4. People swim in a swimming ....
   a) river   b) sea   c) lake   d) pool
5. My feet are too large for these football ....
   a) boots   b) suits   c) goggles   d) hats
6. In tennis, players use .... balls
   a) karate   b) goggles   c) suits   d) tennis

Help your child deal with such questions.

...ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

7. I wanted to play squash with Shaimaa, but I forgot my .... at home.
   a) racket   b) suits   c) goggles   d) boots

8. I put on my swimming .... and jumped in the pool.
   a) suits   b) trainers   c) boots   d) goggles

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

pool - goggles - football - boots - pitch

I like swimming. I wear swimming ....(1).............. to protect my eyes. I always go to the swimming ....(2).............. on Saturdays. My brother is good at playing ....(3)............... . He wears his football ....(4)........... to play with his team. He plays on the football pitch.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. swimming - I - pool - go - a swimming - in - .

....

2. use - play - I - rackets - to - squash - .

....

3. We - tennis - play - a court - on - .

....

5 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Sports equipment

Guiding words:

(pitch - boots - pool)

....

....

....

....



-WRITING - A SPORTS BIOGRAPHY
- PROJECT



Key Vocabulary الكلمات الرئيسية

water pollution	تلوث الماء	garbage	قمامة	Egyptian	صري
agricultural	زراعي	important	هام - مهم	champion	ل
water bodies	مسطحات مائية	biography	سيرة ذاتية	famous	شهور
medal	ميدالية	wildlife	الحياة البرية	competitor	نافس



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

taekwondo player	لاعب تايكوندو	training	ريب
athlete	لاعب رياضي	career	لحياة المهنية
special needs	احتياجات خاصة	organisms	لكائنات الحية



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
compete	يتنافس	competed
avoid	يتجنب	avoided
destroy	يدمر	destroyed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
speak	يتحدث	spoke
begin	يبدأ	began
lose	يخسر	lost



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

famous for	مشهور ب	throw garbage	لقي القمامة
at the age of	في (عمر/سن)	bronze medal	يدالية برونزية
compete against	يتنافس ضد	gold medal	يدالية ذهبية
win a medal	يفوز بميدالية	make children ill	سبب مرض للأطفال
kill organisms	يقتل الكائنات الحية		

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is amazing.

هداية ملاك لاعبة تايكوندو مصرية مشهورة. فهي واحدة من الشخصين الذين حملا العلم المصري في دورة الألعاب الأولمبية في طوكيو في عام ٢٠٢١ وهذا مذهل.

Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14.

She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.

ولدت هداية في الحادي و العشرين من أبريل عام ١٩٩٣. بدأت في ممارسة رياضة التايكوندو في سن السابعة وفازت بالعديد من الجوائز في سن الرابعة عشر. فازت بالميدالية البرونزية في أولمبياد ريو في عام ٢٠١٦. كما فازت أيضًا بالميدالية البرونزية في طوكيو في عام ٢٠٢١.

Hedaya is a very kind person. In 2016 she helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs, Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to compete against, so Hedaya became her competitor and lost. Raja could therefore win the gold medal and it was a very special moment for her.

هداية شخص طيب جدًا. في عام ٢٠١٦. ساعدت لاعبة رياضية مغربية وهي (راجا جارماش) من ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة, لم يكن لدى راجا أحد تنافسه. لذلك أصبحت هداية منافستها وخسرت. لذلك استطاعت راجا أن تفوز بالميدالية الذهبية وكانت لحظة خاصة (مميزة) للغاية بالنسبة لها.

What does Hedaya do now? She is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal!

ماذا تفعل هداية الآن؟ إنها تتدرب بجد. فهي تريد حقًا أن تفوز بميدالية ذهبية!

Help your child listen and read about a famous Egyptian athlete.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ عن احد اللاعبين الرياضيين المصريين المشهورين.



Writing skills

How to write a sports biography. كتابة سيرة ذاتية عن بطل رياضي.

1. Introduce the person, giving his / her name. الشخص معطيًا اسمه.

(Name of a person) is a famous اسم الرياضة .... player.
He / She was born on + تاريخ الميلاد
He / She began practicing اسم الرياضة .... at the age of ....

2. Say why they are famous and give details about their sport.
لماذا هم مشهورون واعط تفاصيل عن رياضتهم.

He / She was the first .... to + inf.
He / She was / is successful because ....
He / She won ....

3. Give more details about their success and why they are interesting or important.
اعط تفاصيل أكثر عن نجاحهم ولماذا هم مثيرون للاهتمام وذو أهمية.

He is also ....
He / She won ....
Moreover / As well as this, ... / He is ....

4. Say what you think could happen next for their career.
قل في رأيك ماذا يمكن أن يحدث بعد ذلك في حياتهم المهنية.

I think he / she will become the most ....

Help your child write a biography about a famous athlete.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب سيرة ذاتية عن لاعب رياضي مشهور.

Model

Sherif Osman was a famous Paralympic Egyptian powerlifting player. He began powerlifting at the age of 18. He was born in Minia on 15th September. He won many important awards. He won the African Championship for a second time in Algeria. He was a successful player because he was disabled. He won the World Championship title in the men's up to 59 kg in Mexico City. Moreover he won Egypt's First Gold Medal at Rio Paralympic.

Project

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Water pollution تلوث الماء



When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution.
Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.

عندما تدخل المواد الكيميائية الضارة إلى المسطحات المائية مثل الأنهار والبحيرات والبحار، فإننا نسمى هذا تلوث المياه. يمكن أن يقتل تلوث المياه الكائنات الحية التي تعيش في الماء مثل الأسماك والطيور وسرطان البحر. ويمكنه أيضا أن يقتل الطيور التي تأكل الأسماك. يمكن أن يتسبب تلوث المياه في فقدان الحيوانات لمواطنها وتغيير بيئاتها.

Help your child read about water pollution. ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن تلوث المياه.

Causes
الأسباب

- Wastewater from sinks, toilets, and showers.

  - مياه الصرف الناتجة عن الأحواض والمراحيض والاستحمام.

- Wastewater and chemicals from factories.

  .مياه الصرف والمواد الكيميائية من المصانع.

- Wastewater from agricultural land and cities into rivers.

  .مياه الصرف من الأراضي الزراعية والمدن والتي تصب في الأنهار.

Effects
التأثيرات



- Dirty water can make children and old people ill.

  - المياه العكرة تجعل الأطفال وكبار السن يمرضون.

- Polluted water destroys wildlife in rivers.

  .المياه الملوثة تدمر الحياة البرية في الأنهار.

Solutions
الحلول



- Save as much water as possible.

  - وفّر أكبر قدر ممكن من الماء.

- Take shorter showers.

  - خذ دشًا في مدة قصيرة.

- Avoid running water.

  - تجنب المياه الجارية.

- Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

  .لا تلق القمامة في أو بالقرب من بحيرة أو شاطئ.

Help your child read about water pollution.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن تلوث المياه.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hedaya Malak is a famous .... taekwondo player.
   a) Egyptian b) Chinese c) Japanese d) French
2. Hedaya was born on .... 21,1993.
   a) May b) March c) June d) April
3. She won a .... medal in Tokyo 2021.
   a) gold b) silver c) bronze d) iron
4. She is a very .... person.
   a) bad b) kind c) ugly d) naughty

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hedaya Malak won the bronze ....
   a) pedal b) medal c) prize d) metal
2. Hedaya Malak carried the Egyptian ....
   a) bag b) flag c) river d) handbag
3. Harmful chemicals cause water ....
   a) solution b) information c) pollution d) invitation
4. Never throw .... in or near a lake or beach.
   a) water b) plants c) mobiles d) garbage
5. Dirty water can make children and old people ....
   a) ill b) well c) good d) kind

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

taekwondo - sports - Egyptian - famous - prizes

There are a lot of famous sports persons in our community. Hedaya Malak and Mohamed Salah are very ....(1)........ . My cousin Noha likes practicing ....(2)........ . Her favorite sport is ....(3)........ .She wants to be an athlete as Hedaya Malak. Hedaya is a famous ....(4)........ taekwondo player.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Water pollution can .... organisms.
   a) play b) meet c) kill d) water
2. Water pollution cause animals to .... their habitats.
   a) make b) play c) eat d) change

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What causes water pollution?

....

4. What can water pollution make for birds?

....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ what does hedaya do now?

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

A biography about a famous Egyptian person

Guiding words:

(born - medal - score)

....

....

....

....

....

Review on Unit



Sports



tennis

handball



football



swimming

squash



sailing

karate



kung fu



greenhouse



taekwondo



jumping



drawing



cooking



Sports places and equipment



football pitch



swimming goggles



tennis court



swimming pool



football boots



squash rackets

I want to be healthy!



1- Short vowels

cup	pot
sit	bat

Long vowels

rose	feet
cube	skate

2- Syllables: One-syllable words.

red	neck	sock

Two-syllable words.

ba-by	ti-ger	spi-der
mu-sic	win-dow	ra-cket

- I'm very good at drawing.
- They are great at helping their mom.
- He is bad at football.

Math : Adding and subtracting decimals

$$\begin{array}{r} 2.367 \\ +8.145 \\ \hline 10.512 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 10.512 \\ -8.145 \\ \hline 2.367 \end{array}$$

Help your child revise unit (2).



*** Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.** اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

The sport you're good at

I'm good at playing football. It's a popular sport all over the world. Most people play it on football pitches. A football team has 11 players; one of them is a goalkeeper. The winning team scores the most goals. I like football very much.

Sports and equipment

Most people like sports. Each sport has its equipment. To play football, you must have football boots. You need a football pitch to play on. To play tennis with a friend, you must have tennis rackets and a tennis ball. To go swimming, you must have goggles. To do karate, you must have a karate suit.

A famous Egyptian athlete

Hedaya Malak is a very famous Egyptian sports person. She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. She won many prizes.

Water pollution

When chemicals go into water, we call this water pollution. Polluted water can kill organisms. Wastewater from sinks, toilets and showers pollutes water. Dirty water can make children and old people ill. We must find quick solutions. We shouldn't throw garbage in water.

Dictation on Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning
....	الكونغ فو
....	الإسكواش
....	كرة القدم
....	كرة اليد
....	انبعاثات
....	صوبة زراعية
....	كابوس

Word	Meaning
....	التنس
....	الإبحار
....	السباحة
....	الكاراتيه
....	يتنفس
....	ظل
....	سام

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning
....	فريق
....	تنس الطاولة
....	شطرنج

Word	Meaning
....	قصيدة
....	اللغة الفرنسية
....	الرسم

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning
....	ملعب تنس
....	حذاء كرة قدم
....	نظارة سباحة
....	كرة التنس

Word	Meaning
....	ملعب كرة قدم
....	حمام سباحة
....	مضارب إسكواش
....	بدلة كاراتيه

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning
....	ميدالية
....	هام - مهم
....	الحياة البرية
....	مصري
....	بطل
....	مشهور

Word	Meaning
....	سيرة ذاتية
....	متنافس
....	تلوث الماء
....	زراعي
....	مسطحات مائية
....	قمامة

Help your child dictate these words. ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (2)

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Adel likes .... as he can do lots of moves
   a) football b) handball c) karate d) basketball
2. Adel loves kung fu because he likes when he does .... kicks
   a) low b) high c) slow d) fast
3. Hana likes to ....
   a) swim b) run c) kick d) jump
4. She often puts on her swimming goggles to protect her ....
   a) nose b) eyes c) ears d) mounth

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I play .... on a small court with walls all around
   a) karate b) squash c) football d) basketball
2. I wear football .... to play football
   a) goggles b) sandals c) rackets d) boots
3. A bad dream is called a ....
   a) nightmare b) luck c) racket d) greenhouse
4. "...................................." is to move air into and out of your lungs
   a) Breathe b) Sleep c) Toxic d) Shade

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

kill - garbage - habitats - beach - pollution

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes and seas, we call this water pollution. Water ....(1).......... can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also ....(2).......... birds that eat the fish. It can cause animals to lose their homes and change their ....(3).......... We shouldn't throw ....(4).......... in or near a lake or beach.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is a great honor. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021. She is practicing hard now. She really wants to win a gold medal in the future!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Hedaya got the .... medal in Tokyo.
   a) gold b) iron c) bronze d) silver
2. Hedaya began practicing taekwondo at the age of ....
   a) seven b) eight c) six d) ten

B) Answer the following questions.

1. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....
2. What does Hedaya want to do in the future? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. you - are - What - sports - at - good - ?
2. the - Hadaya Malak - medal - won - bronze - .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Aya is good at .... (play) tennis.
2. My brother is great .... (for) swimming.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ i'm good at reading English ....

8 Write an email of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب رسالة بريد الكترونية من (30) كلمة.

Your name is Sally. Your email address is Sally@yahoo.com. Your friend's name is Eman and her email address is Eman@yahoo.com

A sports biography

Guiding words:

(Egyptian - taekwondo - won - bronze)

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Activities on Unit (2)

الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Adel likes .... as he can do lots of moves
   a) football b) handball c) karate d) basketball
2. Adel loves kung fu because he likes when he does .... kicks
   a) low b) high c) slow d) fast
3. Hana likes to ....
   a) swim b) run c) kick d) jump
4. She often puts on her swimming goggles to protect her ....
   a) nose b) eyes c) ears d) mounth

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I play .... on a small court with walls all around
   a) karate b) squash c) football d) basketball
2. I wear football .... to play football
   a) goggles b) sandals c) rackets d) boots
3. A bad dream is called a ....
   a) nightmare b) luck c) racket d) greenhouse
4. "..." is to move air into and out of your lungs
   a) Breathe b) Sleep c) Toxic d) Shade

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

أكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

kill - garbage - habitats - beach - pollution

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes and seas, we call this water pollution. Water ....(1).......... can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also ....(2).......... birds that eat the fish. It can cause animals to lose their homes and change their ....(3).......... shouldn't throw ....(4).......... in or near a lake or beach.

Help your child deal with such questions.

يمكنك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ ا نص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is a great honor. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021. She is practicing hard now. She really wants to win a gold medal in the future!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Hedaya got the .... medal in Tokyo.
   a) gold   b) iron   c) bronze   d) silver
2. Hedaya began practicing taekwondo at the age of ....
   a) seven   b) eight   c) six   d) ten

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....
4. What does Hedaya want to do in the future? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. you - are - What - sports - at - good - ?
2. the - Hadaya Malak - medal - won - bronze - .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Aya is good at .... (play) tennis.
2. My brother is great .... (for) swimming.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

➪ i'm good at reading English ....

8 Write an email of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب رسالة بريد الكترونية من (30) كلمة.

Your name is Sally. Your email address is Sally@yahoo.com. Your friend's name is Eman and her email address is Eman@yahoo.com

Guiding words: A sports biography

(Egyptian - taekwondo - won - bronze)

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

play - you - So - football

Omar : Hello, Ahmed. What's your favorite sport?

Ahmed : I'm good at 1) .... so it's my favor

Omar : Great! Where do you 2) ....

Ahmed : I usually play it at the club. What about 3) ....

Omar : My favorite is tennis. I like watching matches on TV.

Ahmed : 4) .... do I. Let's watch a match togeth

Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

less - look - pollution - Emissions

Sara : How can air 1) .... affect our heal

Hany : 2) ..... from cars and factories can be dangerous for our lun

Sara : How can we 3) .... after our plan

Hany : We should use our cars 4) .... and use our bikes mo

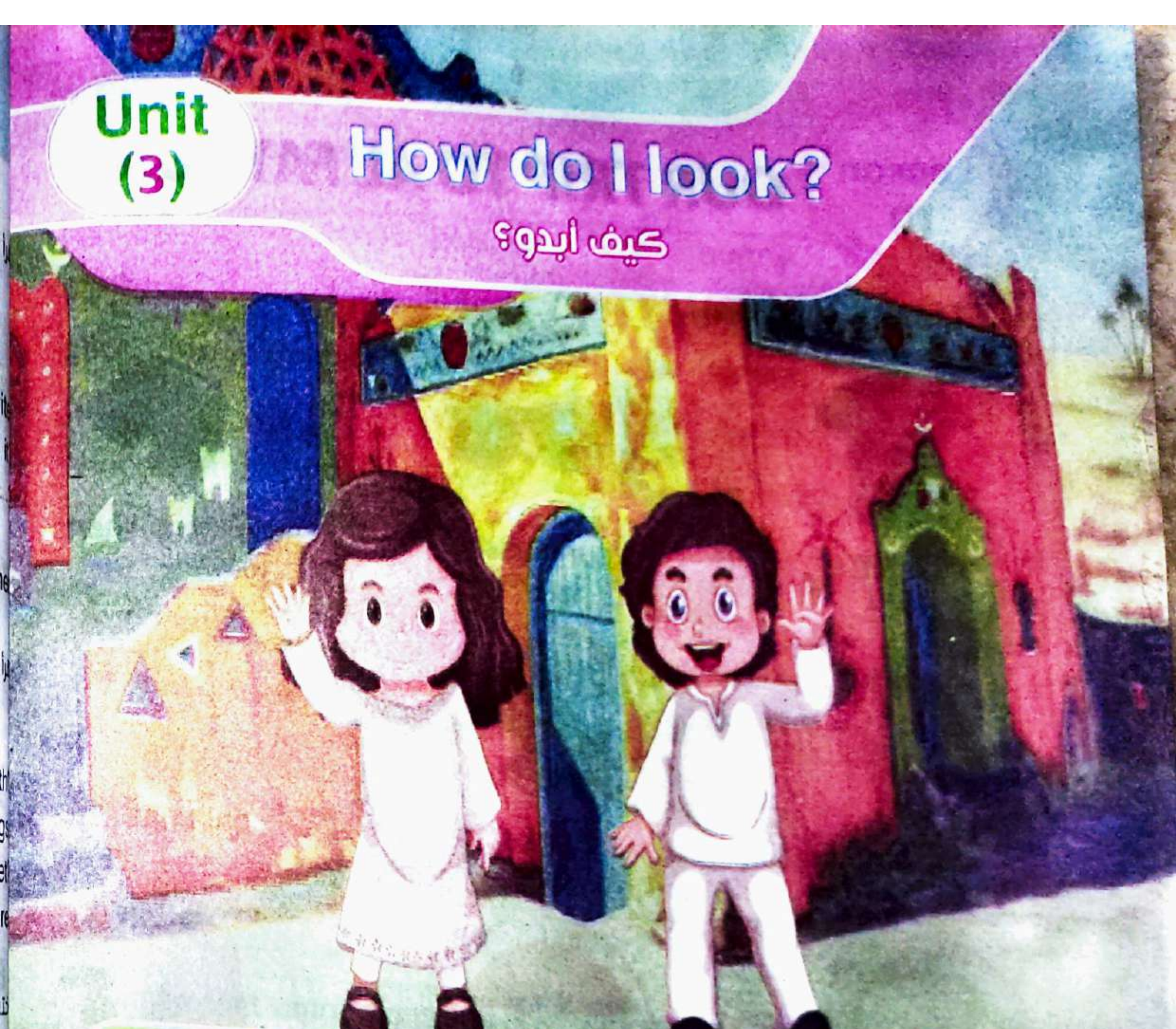
2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hani is very good at .... karat
   a) do b) did c) doing d) does
2. Mai is good .... making cake
   a) at b) for c) on d) to
3. Malak is good at ....
   a) swim b) swims c) swam d) swimmin
4. Ahmed is good at ....
   a) plays tennis b) play tennis c) played tennis d) tennis
5. We are bad at .... poem
   a) writing b) wrote c) writes d) write

Help your child deal with such questions.

طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



In this unit the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about different types of clothes.
  يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الأنواع المختلفة من الملابس.
- listen to a conversation about packing for a vacation.
  يستمع إلى محادثة عن حزم الحقائب لقضاء عطلة.
- practice using the infinitive of purpose.
  يمارس استخدام مصدر الفعل للتعبير عن الغرض.
- read a traditional folktale.
  يقرأ حكاية شعبية تقليدية.
- learn how to say past simple endings /d/, /t/, and /Id/.
  يتعلم كيفية نطق نهايات الماضي البسيط /Id/ ، /t/ ، /d/.
- multiply multi-digit numbers.
  يضرب أعداد متعددة الأرقام.
- write a description of favorite clothes using adjectives.
  يكتب وصفًا للملابس المفضلة مستخدمًا الصفات.
- research and make a leaflet about traditional clothes from around the world.
  يبحث ويصمم منشورًا عن الملابس التقليدية من كل أنحاء العالم.

Lesson (1)

OUR TRIP TO AL FAYOUM

Listen and say. استمع وقل.



T-shirt
تي شيرت



sunglasses
نظارة شمسية



swimming shorts
شورت للسباحة (مايوه)



sweater
بلوفر - سترة



sneakers
حذاء رياضي



pajamas
بيجامة



necklace
قلادة / عِقد



umbrella
مظلة



coat
معطف



galabeya
جلابية



uniform
زي موحد



scarf
كوفية / وشاح

Help your child identify these words.

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

cool	بارد باعتدال - جميل	holiday	إجازة	sunny	مشمس
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	trip	رحلة	pearl	لؤلؤة
pool	حمام سباحة - مسبح	stripes	خطوط	striped	مقلّم - مخطط
man-made	من صنع الإنسان	really	حقًا	spotted	منقط
shopping mall	مركز تسوق	lovely	جميل - رائع	comfortable	مريح
traditional	تقليدي	modern	حديث	Al Fayoum	مدينة الفيوم



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
pack	يحزم الحقيبة	packed	know	يعرف	knew
wait	ينتظر	waited	take	يأخذ	took
need	يحتاج	needed	wear	يرتدي	wore

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

It's so exciting!	إنه أمر مثير جدًا!!	I can't wait	لا أطيق الانتظار
I'm excited to see them.	أنا مسرور لرؤيتهم.	for ages	لفترة طويلة
That's my favorite.	إنه المفضل لدي.	come from	يأتي من
on your feet	في قدميك	need to	يجب أن / بحاجة إلى
walk around a lot	يتجول كثيرًا	share with	يتشارك مع
in the evenings	في أوقات المساء	come on	هيا
with stripes	ذات خطوط	find out	يكتشف

Listen and read.

Mom : Asser, we need to pack our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow.

يا آسر، يجب أن نحزم حقائبنا لقضاء إجازتنا غدًا.

Asser : It's so exciting! I can't wait to go to Al Fayoum to see Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak. And, of course, Faris and Dina.

إنه أمر مثير للغاية! لا أطيق الانتظار للذهاب إلى الفيوم لرؤية العم حاتم والعمة ملك. وبالطبع فارس ودينا.

Mom : I know. I'm excited to see them, too. We haven't seen them for ages! But come on, we need to pack!

أنا أعرف. أنا متحمسة لرؤيتهم أيضًا. لم نرهم منذ فترة طويلة! ولكن هيا، نحن بحاجة إلى حزم حقائبنا!

Asser : OK, I need to pack my green T-shirt and my swimming shorts because they have a lovely pool, don't they?

حسنًا، يجب أن أحزم التي شيرت الأخضر وسراويل السباحة الخاصة بي لأن لديهم مسبحًا جميلًا، أليس كذلك؟

Mom : Yes, and remember your sunglasses. It will be very sunny.

نعم، وتذكر نظارتك الشمسية. سيكون الجو مشمسًا جدًا.

Asser : Will I need a coat and a scarf?

هل سأحتاج إلى معطف وكوفية؟

Mom : No, Asser, you won't. But you should pack a sweater. It can be cool in the evenings.

لا، يا آسر. لن تحتاج. ولكن يجب أن تحزم سترة (بلوفر). يمكن أن يكون الجو باردًا في المساء.

Asser : OK. I'll pack my blue sweater. That's my favorite.

حسنًا، سأحزم سترتي الزرقاء. إنها المفضلة لدي.

Mom : You'll need your sneakers because we'll be walking around a lot and you need to wear something comfortable on your feet.

ستحتاج إلى حذائك الرياضي لأننا سنتجول كثيرًا. وتحتاج إلى ارتداء شيء مريح في قدميك.

Asser : What about my best galabeya? Will I need the one that Grandma gave me?

ماذا عن أفضل جلابية لدي؟ هل سأحتاج إلى الجلابية التي أعطتها لي الجدة؟

Mom : No, you won't. But I will take my gold necklace.

لا، لن تحتاج. لكنني سآخذ قلادتي الذهبية.

Asser : Hmm. OK. What else do I need? Oh, I know! My pajamas! I'll take the ones with the stripes. They're really cool!

همم. حسنًا. ماذا أحتاج أيضًا؟ آه، أنا أعرف! بيجامتي! سآخذ البيجامة المقلمة. إنها حقًا جميلة!

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Narrator	:	1
Speaker	:	Youssef went to the shopping mall. He bought some striped pajamas.
Narrator	:	2
Speaker	:	Nesma went to the park. She took a spotted umbrella.
Narrator	:	3
Speaker	:	Amira went to school. She wore her striped uniform.
Narrator	:	4
Speaker	:	Wael played in the rain. He wore a coat and a spotted scarf.



Language Functions

1- Expressing necessity:

للتعبير عن الضرورة:

I / We / You / They + need to + inf. (المصدر) ......

He / She / It + needs to + inf. (المصدر) ......

e.g. She needs to pack her suitcase.

2- Talking about future events:

الحديث عن الأحداث المستقبلية:

will ('ll) + inf. (المصدر) ......

e.g. He will pack his blue T-shirt.

3- Giving advice:

إعطاء النصيحة:

Subject + should / shouldn't + inf. (المصدر) ......

e.g. - You should pack a sweater. - You shouldn't sleep late.

Help your child listen and read the dialog. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الحوار ويقرأه.

Activities

ع في نهاية الكتاب .

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Noha will .... her suit
   a) pack b) play c) eat d) think
2. Noha is ....
   a) sad b) bad c) excited d) slow
3. Noha needs to pack her green ....
   a) sweeter b) dress c) skirt d) T-shirt
4. It's .... at n
   a) hot b) cool c) rainy d) cloudy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

كمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

holiday - packing - lovely - sunglasses - sweater

Asser and his mom are going on a holiday to Al Fay
They are going to see Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak. They h
a ....(1)......... pool. So, Asser is ....(2)......... his T-
and swimming shorts to swim in the pool. He is packing
.........(3)......... because it will be sunny. He is also packing
.........(4)......... because it can be cool in the evenings.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

كلمة الصحيحة.

1. We need to .... our suitcases for our holi
   a) pack b) back c) broke d) bake
2. I can't .... to go to Alexandria and swim in the
   a) want b) went c) wait d) feel
3. We're going to the beach. I need to pack my ....
   a) swimming shorts b) sweater c) T-shirt d) pajama

4. When I play football, I wear a ....
   a) scarf   b) T-shirt   c) sweater   d) pajamas
5. I'll take my .... It can be very cold.
   a) T-shirt   b) coat   c) pajamas   d) necklace
6. My mum wears a gold ....
   a) scarf   b) necklace   c) dress   d) sweater
7. When it rains, I take my ....
   a) sunglasses   b) umbrella   c) shorts   d) T-shirt

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. excited - I'm - see - my - to - uncle - .

....

2. have - lovely - They - a - pool - .

....

3. need - What - do - to - I - pack - ?

....

4. Asser - is - Who - to - going - visit - ?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ i'll take my sweater

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words:

Our trip to Al Fayoum

(pack - sunglasses - hot)

Lesson (2) MY FAVORITE CLOTHES

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word
robe	ثوب	belt	حزام	spotted
gloves	قفازات	crown	تاج	striped
costume	زي	pocket	جيب	sleeves

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word
Egyptian clothing	الملابس المصرية	useful	مفيد	colorful
information	معلومات	patterns	نقوش	dress
Sham El-Nessim	شم النسيم	Eid	العيد	essay
popular	شعبي - محبوب - شائع	grades	درجات	hidden
festival	احتفال - مهرجان	hall	صالة	wedding



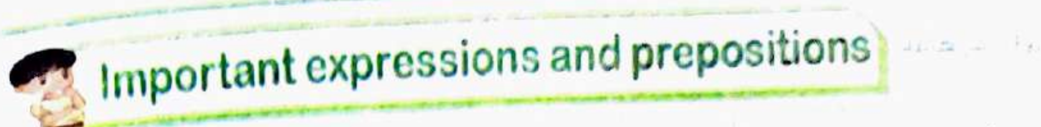
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
borrow	يستعير	borrowed	help	يساعد	helped
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	protect	يحمي	protect…

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
wear	يرتدي	wore	sleep	ينام	slept
leave	يغادر	left	tell	يخبر	told
give	يعطي	gave	catch	يلحق - يمسك	caught…



Important expressions and prepositions

of course	بالطبع	on her head	على رأسها
look like a princess	تشبه أميرة	on her hands	على يديها
It looks really cool.	تبدو جميلة حقًا.	a special festival	احتفال خاص
made from	مصنوع من	on holiday	في إجازة
good grades	درجات جيدة	do a project	يقوم بمشروع
traditional Egyptian clothes	ملابس مصرية تقليدية		

استمع واقرأ.

Listen and read.

Thomas : Hi, Fares. Can you help me? I'm doing a school project about Egyptian clothing. Can you give me some information?

مرحبا يا فارس. هل يمكنك أن تساعدني؟ أنا أقوم بمشروع مدرسي عن الملابس المصرية. هل يمكنك أن تعطيني بعض المعلومات؟

Fares : Hi, Thomas. Yes, of course. What do you want to know?

مرحبا توماس. نعم بالطبع. ماذا تريد أن تعرف؟

Thomas : Well, what do you usually wear?

حسنا، ماذا ترتدي عادة؟

Fares : I live in Sohag and it's usually very hot here. Today, I'm wearing shorts and a T-shirt.

أعيش في سوهاج. والجو عادة ما يكون حارا جدا هنا. اليوم، أنا ارتدي شورت وتي شيرت.

Thomas : Cool! Can you tell me about some traditional Egyptian clothes?

رائع! هل يمكنك أن تخبرني عن بعض الملابس المصرية التقليدية؟

Fares : Oh, sure. Well, many men wear the galabeya. This is the long white robe that is very popular.

أوه، بالتأكيد. حسنا يرتدي كثير من الرجال الجلابية. وهي عبارة عن ثوب أبيض طويل وهي محبوبة جدًا.

Thomas : Yes, I've seen it. It looks really cool to wear.

نعم، لقد رأيتها. فهي تبدو رائعة حقًا للارتداء.

Help your child listen and read the dialog. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ الحوار.



Fares : Yes, it's cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors too. The sleeves are long so we don't get sunburned!

نعم إنها رائعة لأنها مصنوعة من القطن. وهي عادة بيضاء ولكن يمكنك أن تحصل على ألوان أخرى أيضًا. والأكمام طويلة لذلك لانتعرض لحروق الشمس.

Thomas : Are there pockets?

هل بها جيوب؟

Fares : Yes! But they're hidden – you can't see them from the outside.

نعم، لكنها مخفية - لا يمكنك رؤيتها من الخارج.

Thomas : Do you wear galabeyas when you're celebrating a special festival?

هل ترتدون الجلاليب عند الاحتفال بمهرجان خاص؟

Fares : We do, and the clothes we wear for Eid, for example, are very beautiful. They can be colorful. Sometimes there are beautiful patterns on them.

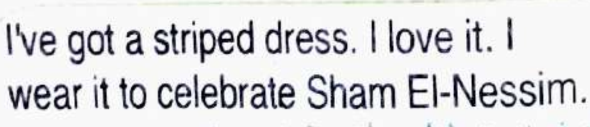
نعم، والملابس التي نرتديها في العيد على سبيل المثال جميلة جدًا. ويمكن أن تكون الملابس ملونة. وأحيانًا يكون عليها نقوش جميلة.

Thomas : Thanks, Fares. That's really useful!

شكرًا فارس. هذا مفيد حقًا!

Read and role-play.

اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.



My favorite thing is my sweater. It's blue and it has a pocket. I wear it when I travel.

الشيء المفضل لدي هو سترتي. إنها زرقاء وبها جيب. وأنا ارتديها عندما اسافر.

Language Focus

1- Infinitive of purpose صيغة المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

- **We use (to + infinitive) to express purpose; and to say why someone does something.**

نستخدم (المصدر + to) للتعبير عن الغرض ولبيان لماذا يقوم الشخص بفعل شيء ما.

e.g. Why did she go to town?

- She went to town to buy a dress. ذهبت إلى المدينة لكي تشتري فستانا.

e.g. Why did you go to the hall?

- I went to the hall to get my coat. ذهبت إلى الصالة لكي أحضر معطفي.

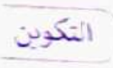
2- The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Usage الاستخدام

يستخدم ليدل على حدث بدأ و انتهى في الماضي

e.g. He traveled to Aswan last year.

Mayar made a cake two days ago.

Form 

يتكون من التصريف الثاني للفعل بإضافة (d, ed, ied) للفعل المنتظم والفعل غير المنتظم يحفظ كما هو.

play ⟶ played   go ⟶ went

Negative النفي

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (المصدر)

e.g. I didn't play football yesterday.

She didn't go to the zoo last week.

(Yes / No) question (السؤال بـ (هل))

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf.(المصدر) ......?

e.g. Did you see your friends yesterday?

- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

Wh- question (السؤال بكلمة استفهام)

Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf.(المصدر) ......?

e.g. Why did you go to your bedroom?

- I went to my bedroom to sleep.

Keywords (الكلمات الدالة)

yesterday	أمس	ago	منذ	in the past	في الماضي
in + (تاريخ ماضي)	في...	last (week - month - year)	(الأسبوع، الشهر، العام) الماضي		

e.g. They went to the library yesterday.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. I went to the library .... a book.
   a) borrowing b) borrow c) borrows d) to borrow
2. Injy used a pen .... her essay.
   a) to write b) writing c) write d) wrote
3. He bought a new suitcase .... on holiday.
   a) taking b) take c) to take d) takes
4. Malak wears her sunglasses .... her eyes.
   a) protecting b) to protect c) protect d) protects
5. Basma went to the club to .... tennis.
   a) playing b) played c) plays d) play

Help your child learn some language.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم

6. Omar played tennis ....
   a) next week   b) tomorrow   c) yesterday   d) last

7. I went to the shop .... some bread.
   a) buy   b) buying   c) buys   d) to buy

8. I didn't .... a racket last week.
   a) buy   b) bought   c) buys   d) buying

9. .... you meet your friends yesterday?
   a) Do   b) Did   c) Are   d) Were

10. Hazem .... hard last year to get good grades.
    a) study   b) studies   c) studying   d) studied

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I went to my bedroom to .... (sleeping).
2. My teacher uses a red pen to .... (corrects) homework.
3. Tarek bought a racket to .... (plays) tennis.
4. Basel called Younis to .... (asking) for help.
5. Sherif .... (buy) a new suitcase yesterday.
6. Injy .... (goes) to the library last Monday.
7. We .... (study) hard to get good grades last month.
8. I .... (wear) a galabeya to stay cool last night.
9. Malak went to the shop .... (in) buy some bread.
10. We .... (go) to the park two weeks ago.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Marwa is wearing a ....
   a) costume b) skirt c) sneakers d) blouse
2. Marwa looks like a ....
   a) vet b) princess c) teacher d) clown
3. Marwa is wearing a spotted ....
   a) skirt b) socks c) blouse d) dress
4. Marwa has white .... on her hands
   a) crown b) scarf c) gloves d) socks

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. I bought some sunglasses .... on holiday
   a) wear b) to wear c) wore d) wears
2. We went to the park .... with our friends
   a) playing b) play c) to play d) plays
3. Hazem studied hard .... good grades
   a) gets b) get c) to get d) got
4. Tarek .... a racket yesterday
   a) buy b) bought c) buying d) buys
5. Basel .... take his bag last week
   a) don't b) didn't c) doesn't d) isn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

pen - crown - gloves - spotted - pockets

Sarah and Nour are in a party. Sarah is wearing a ....(1).......... dress with two ....(2).......... . Nour is wearing a ....(3).......... on her head. She looks like a princess! She is wearing white ....(4).......... on her hands. She is wearing a costume.

Help your child deal with such questions.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday Samy and his father went to the clothes shop. They needed to buy some clothes for Eid. Samy bought blue shorts and white T-shirt. His father bought a white galabeya with pockets. Samy bought a striped dress for his mother. Samy's mother was happy and thanked him. The next morning, all the family went to Alexandria to celebrate Eid.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Samy needed to buy .... for Eid.
   a) clothes b) food c) meat d) desserts
2. Smay bought a striped .... for his mother.
   a) scarf b) shirt c) dress d) skirt

B) **Answer the following questions.**

3. Where did Samy's family go in Eid? ....
4. What did samy's father buy?..

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. went - I - my - to sleep - bedroom - to - .

....

2. the party - the train - Nayera - to catch - left - .

....

3. town - She - to - a dress - to buy - went - .

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Sami went to town to .... (buying) new sneakers.
2. Ali used the internet .... (for) do a project.
3. Heba .... (go) to the park last Friday.
4. Mona .... (travel) to Aswan yesterday.
5. Nayera .... (leave) the party to catch the train.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



- THE ELVES AND TH...
- Pronunciation
- Math

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
kind	عطوف - طيب	honest	أمين	poor	فقير
happy	سعيد	tired	مُتعَب - مُرهق	beautiful	جميل
amazing	مذهل	delicious	لذيذ	new	جديد
elves	الجن - عفاريت - أقزام	shoemaker	صانع الأحذية	leather	جلد "مدبوغ"

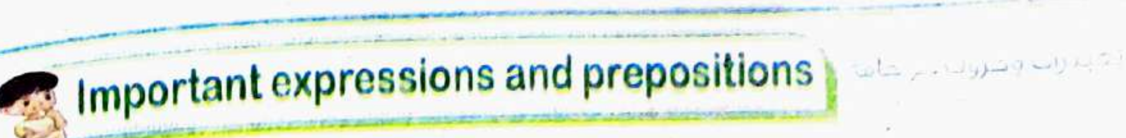
Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
town	مدينة صغيرة	amazed	مندهش	workshop	ورشة
enough	كاف	wife	زوجة	dear	عزيزي
quickly	بسرعة	surprised	متفاجئ / مندهش	money	نقود
meal	وجبة	perfect	ممتاز - رائع	tonight	الليلة



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present		**Past**	**Present**		**Past**
walk	يمشي	walked	cut out	يقطع	cut out
describe	يصف	described	go	يذهب	went
call	ينادي	called	say	يقول	said
thank	يشكر	thanked	pay	يدفع	paid
dance	يرقص	danced	hide	يختبئ	hid
arrive	يصل	arrived	leave	يغادر - يترك	left
believe	يعتقد	believed	sit	يجلس	sat



Important expressions and prepositions

work hard	يعمل بجد	a pair of shoes	زوج من الأحذية
in the morning	في الصباح	try on	يجرب - يقيس (ملابس)
for the night	لمدة ليلة واحدة	find out	يكتشف
once upon a time	ذات مرة (في يوم من الأيام)	all over the land	في شتى بقاع الأرض
arrive home	يصل البيت	call to	ينادي على

THE ELVES AND THE SHOEMAKER العفاريت وصانع الأحذية

Once upon a time, a kind and honest shoemaker lived in town with his wife. They were very poor, but they were happy. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money.

ذات مرة، كان صانع أحذية طيب وأمين يعيش في المدينة مع زوجته. كانا فقيرين جدًا، ولكنهما كانا سعداء. عمل صانع الأحذية بجد، ولكن لم يكن لديه مال.

One night, the shoemaker was in his workshop. "Oh dear. I've only got enough leather for one more pair of shoes. But I'm too tired to make them tonight. I'll cut the leather now and make the shoes in the morning." The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed.

وذات ليلة، كان صانع الأحذية في ورشته. وقال "يا إلهي، لدي فقط جلد كافٍ لزوج واحد من الأحذية. ولكنني مُتعب جدًا لدرجة أنني لا أستطيع صنعها الليلة. سوف أقطع الجلد الآن وأقوم بعمل الحذاء في الصباح." قام صانع الأحذية بقطع الجلد، وذهب للنوم.

The following morning, the shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes. He called to his wife to come quickly to the workshop. "Look at these shoes!" said the shoemaker. There, on his table was an amazing pair of shoes. "They are beautiful. Did you make them?" His wife looked surprised. "No, my dear, I didn't make them," he said.

وفي الصباح التالي، لم يستطع صانع الأحذية أن يصدق عينيه. استدعى زوجته للحضور بسرعة إلى الورشة. قال صانع الأحذية: "انظري إلى هذا الحذاء". هناك، على طاولته كان يوجد زوج رائع من الأحذية. بدت الزوجة مندهشة وقالت: "إنها جميلة. هل قمت بصنعها؟". قال: "لا يا عزيزتي، لم أصنعها."



Then a man walked into the shop. "I have never seen such amazing shoes," he said. "Can I try them?" He tried on the shoes. "They're prefect," he said and paid the shoemaker. "Quickly," said the shoemaker's wife," go and buy some more leather." The shoemaker went to buy some more leather. When he arrived home, the shoemaker's wife had made him a delicious meal. "I will just cut out the leather, and then come and eat." The shoemaker cut out the leather for two pairs of shoes and left the workshop for the night.

ثم دخل إلى المحل رجل وقال " لم أر قط مثل هذا الحذاء المدهش. هل يمكنني أن أقيسه؟" فقام بقياس الحذاء وقال "إنه ملائمين لي." ودفع لصانع الأحذية ثمنه. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية" بسرعة, اذهب واشتري المزيد من الجلد." ذهب صانع الأحذية لشراء المزيد من الجلود. و عندما وصل للبيت، كانت زوجة صانع الأحذية قد أعدت له وجبة لذيذة. قال: "سوف أقطع الجلد ثم آتي لآكل." قام صانع الأحذية بقطع الجلد لزوجين من الأحذية وترك الورشة طوال الليل

The following morning, the shoemaker and his wife were amazed to see two beautiful pairs of shoes in the workshop. "We must find out who is making these shoes," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's hide tonight and see who is helping us."

في صباح اليوم التالي كان صانع الأحذية وزوجته مندهشين لرؤية زوجين جميلين من الأحذية في الورشة. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية "يجب أن نعرف من يصنع هذه الأحذية. هيا نختبئ الليلة ونرى من يساعدنا."

That night, the shoemaker cut out the leather and then hid. They were very surprised to see two little elves! The elves started to make the shoes. Soon, they had made two more pairs of beautiful shoes. "We must thank the elves," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's make them new clothes."

في تلك الليلة، قام صانع الأحذية بقطع الجلد ثم اختبأ. كانا متفاجئين عند رؤية عفريتين صغيرين من بعيد. بدأ العفريتان في عمل الأحذية وسرعان ما صنعا زوجين من الأحذية الجميلة. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية: "يجب أن نشكرهما. هيا نصنع لهما ملابس جديدة."

The next night, the elves found their new clothes. They were so happy that they danced around the workshop before sitting down to make more shoes. Soon, people came from all over the land to buy the shoemaker's shoes. He and his wife weren't ever poor again and they lived happily ever after.

في الليلة التالية، وجد العفريتان ملابسهما الجديدة. كانا سعداء جدًا لدرجة أنهما رقصا حول الورشة قبل أن يجلسا ليصنعا المزيد من الأحذية. وسرعان ما جاء الناس من جميع أرجاء الأرض لكي يشتروا أحذية صانع الأحذية. لم يعد صانع الأحذية وزوجته فقراء مرة أخرى وعاشا في سعادة دائمة.

☆ Answer the following questions.

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية.

1. Was the shoemaker rich? ....
2. Who were helping the shoemaker? ....
3. What did the shoemaker and his wife make for the elves? ....

PRONUNCIATION

How to pronounce (ed)

كيف تنطق حرفي (ed) في نهاية الفعل الماضي

إذا انتهى أصل الفعل بالأصوات /d/ و /t/ تنطق (ed) /ɪd/.

want → wanted   end → ended

إذا انتهى أصل الفعل بهذه الأصوات /p/, /s/, /f/, /ʃ/, /k/, /tʃ/ تنطق (ed) /t/.

hope → hoped   laugh → laughed
fix → fixed   wash → washed
watch → watched   like → liked

إذا انتهى أصل الفعل بهذه الأصوات /b/, /z/, /g/, /l/, /m/, /n/, /r/, /v/, vowel suond
تنطق (ed) /d/.

play → played   clean → cleaned

more examples

مزيد من الأمثلة

/d/	/t/	/Id/
called	walked	waited
climbed	dressed	studied
lived	chopped	needed

Listen and write the verbs in the correct group.

استمع واكتب الأفعال في المجموعة الصحيحة.

- asked
- waited
- promised
- counted
- carried
- slowed
- delivered
- fixed
- tasted

/d/	/t/	/Id/

Help your child say the past simple ending (ed).

Math: Multiply multi-digit numbers

ضرب الأعداد بها أكثر من رقم.

Multiply Multi-digit numbers

1. 10 x 10 = 100
2. 30 x 20 = 600
3. 50 x 50 = 2500
4. 38 x 24 = 912

Think and do the sums.

فكر وحل المسائل.

1. 15 x 31 = ...
2. 20 x 40 = ...
3. 42 x 20= ....
4. 12 x 12 = ...

A life problem

مسألة حياتية

For sports day, Mrs Amal ordered 12 boxes of T-shirts for the students. Each box has 18 T-shirts. How many T-shirts did Mrs Amal order?

Answer : 12 X 18 = 216



Solve the following problem.

حل المسألة التالية.

Nora makes hats. She's very good. She can make 25 hats each week. How many hats can she make in 48 weeks?

....

Did you know ?

-If you multiply any number by zero, the answer is zero!

إذا قمت بضرب أي رقم في صفر يكون الناتج صفراً!



Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. He is .... He has no money.
   a) rich b) smart c) wealthy d) poor
2. I love this meal. It's ....
   a) dirty b) delicious c) bad d) terrible
3. The shoemaker works in a ....
   a) ship b) hospital c) workshop d) rocket
4. Our teacher is .... We all love him.
   a) bad b) unkind c) ugly d) kind

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

pair - hid - wife - leather - shoes

A shoemaker and his wife were poor and only had one piece of leather to make one pair of shoes. The next morning, they found out that the ....(1).......... of shoes were made. They sold them and bought more ....(2).......... to make more shoes. He woke up again to find more ....(3).......... were made. He and his wife ....(4).......... to see who was making the shoes. They were very surprised to see two little elves.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. worked - The - hard - shoemaker - .

....

2. very - were - poor - They - .

....

3. He - with - in - lived - wife - town - his - .

....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:
النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Once upon a time, there was a poor shoemaker. One da
he slept after he bought some leather at the market because h
was tired. When he woke up, he found a very pretty pair of shoe
on his table. He sold them and bought some food and mor
leather. The next morning he found three elves making anothe
pair of shoes. He thanked them and his wife gave them foo
and clothes. They made more and more. Everyone bought shoe
from the shoemaker. He lived happily ever after.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The shoemaker was ....
   a) sick   b) poor   c) bad   d) angry
2. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to the ....
   a) shoes   b) elves   c) leather   d) market

B) Answer the following questions.

3. How many elves did the shoemaker find? ....
4. What did the wife give to the elves? ....

5 Find the product.
جد الناتج.

1. 20 x 50 = ...
2. 12 x 16 = ...
3. 22 x 33 = ...
4. 15 x 37 = ...

6 Solve the following problems.
المسائل الكلامية الآتية.

a) Ali bought 15 books. Each book has 80 pages.

⇨ How many pages are there in all?

....

b) Nada saw 12 trees. In each tree, there were 22 birds.

⇨ How many birds did Nada see in all?

....



WRITING & PROJECT



Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

tie	كرافتة - رابطة عنق	trousers	بنطلون - سروال
smart	أنيق	pale	باهت (اللون)
school uniform	زي مدرسي	dark	غامق (اللون)
vest	صديري	student	طالب
checked	على شكل مربعات / كاروه	feast	عيد



Extra Vocabulary المفردات الإضافية

hat	قبعة	colorful	ملون
skirt	جيبة	celebrations	احتفالات
jacket	جاكيت	sombrero	السومبريرو (قبعة مكسيكية)
socks	جورب	leaflet	منشور - نشرة
gold	ذهب	silver	فضة
linen	كتان	style	نمط - أسلوب



Countries دول

Mexico	المكسيك	Finland	فنلندا
India	الهند	Japan	اليابان



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

have to	يجب أن	pale blue shirt	قميص أزرق باهت
in summer	في الصيف	dark blue trousers	بنطال أزرق غامق
bright colors	ألوان زاهية	checked skirt	جيبة كاروه
light green shorts	شورت أخضر فاتح	short-sleeved	ذو أكمام قصيرة

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.



Student (A)

I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.

قًا أحب الزي المدرسي. يرتدي الجميع قميصًا أبيض بأكمام قصيرة. وترتدي البنات جيبة زرقاء والأولاد يرتدون بناطيل
ء. يجب أن نرتدي جميعًا جوارب بيضاء وأحذية جلدية سوداء. الطقس ليس باردًا جدًا هنا لكن عندما يكون باردًا نرتدي
زتنا الزرقاء.



Student (B)

At school, I wear a pale blue shirt and dark blue trousers. We have to wear a tie every day. It's dark blue with light blue stripes on it. The girls in my school also wear a pale blue shirt, but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue and white checked skirt. The girls don't have to wear a tie.

لمدرسة أرتدي قميصًا أزرقًا باهت اللون وبنطلون أزرق غامق. يجب أن نرتدي رابطة عنق كل يوم. ورابطة العنق لونها
غامق وبها خطوط زرقاء خفيفة. وترتدي البنات في مدرستي أيضًا قمصان زرقاء باهتة اللون ولكن لا يرتدين بناطيل. فهم
ن تنورة (جيبة) كاروهات ذات لون أبيض و أزرق. ولا يجب عليهن ارتداء رابطة عنق.



Student (C)

Our school uniform is really smart. We have to wear a white shirt with a red tie. We wear a dark gray skirt and a blue jacket.

زي مدرستنا أنيق حقًا. يجب أن نرتدي قميصًا أبيض ورابطة عنق حمراء. و نرتدي
جيبة رمادية داكنة و جاكيت أزرق.

Student (D)

The girls and boys have different uniforms at my school. The boys wear light green shorts and long green socks. We wear white shirts and we've got a dark red sweater for when it gets cold. My sister's uniform is different. She wears a blue skirt and a yellow T-shirt.



يرتدي الأولاد والبنات أزياء مختلفة في مدرستي. يرتدي الأولاد شورت أخضر فاتح وجوارب خضراء طويلة. نرتدي قمصانًا بيضاء ولدينا سترات حمراء داكنة عندما يكون الطقس باردًا. زي أختي مختلف. فهي ترتدي جيبة زرقاء وتي شيرت أصفر.

Student (E)

Our uniform is a dark blue skirt for the girls or dark blue shorts for the boys, a pale blue cotton shirt, white socks, and black shoes. When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests or jackets. I like my uniform!

ترتدي البنات في مدرستي جيبة زرقاء داكنة والأولاد يرتدون شورت أزرق غامق، وقميص قطني أزرق فاتح، وجورب أبيض وحذاء أسود؛ عندما يكون الطقس باردًا نرتدي صديري أزرق غامق أو جاكيت. أحب الزي الخاص بي!

Read again and write (T) True or (F) False. اقرأ ثانية واكتب (T) صح أو (F) خطأ.

1. At student A's school, students wear black leather shoes. ( )
2. At student B's school, the boys wear a blue and white checked skirt. ( )
3. The boys at student D's school wear long green socks. ( )

Order of adjective

ترتيب الصفات

When we use adjectives, we put them in this way:

ند وصف شيء بأكثر من صفة لابد أن نراعي ترتيب الصفات كالتالي :

size	→	age	→	color	→	material	→	Noun
المقاس	+	العمر	+	اللون	+	المادة الخام	+	الاسم

e.g. I have a small new white cotton T-shirt.

Study the following table . س هذا الجدول (لاحظ ترتيب الصفات).

1- size	الحجم / المقاس	→ big	كبير	- small	صغير
2- age	العمر	→ old	قديم	- new	جديد
3- color	اللون	→ black	أسود	- white	أبيض
4- material	المادة الخام	→ cotton	قطن	- linen	كتان

- She wore a green, cotton dress.
- He had to wear an old, orange hat.
- Dad bought a new, white galabeya.

Put the following adjectives in the correct order. م الصفات الآتية بالترتيب الصحيح.

1. I bought a .... racket.
(black - big - new
2. He sold his .... car.
(old - white - sma
3. She wears a .... dress.
(green - new - sma
4. The shoemaker made .... shoes.
...ther - new



Writing skills

How to write a description of your favorite clothes.

كيفية كتابة وصف للملابس المفضلة بالنسبة لك.

My favorite clothes are ....
I have a , ... which ....
I also like ....
They are my favorite because ....

الملابس المفضلة بالنسبة لي هي ....
أنا لدي ....، والتي ....
أنا أيضًا أحب ....
هذه الملابس مفضلة بالنسبة لي لأنها ....

My favorite clothes are trousers and shirts. I have a small leather bag, which is black. I also like linen shirts. They're my favorite because they are comfortable.

انظر واقرأ.

Look and read.

CLOTHES IN MEXICO



These girls are wearing traditional Mexican dresses. Look! They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. Girls in Mexico wear dresses like these during feasts and celebrations.

ترتدي هؤلاء الفتيات فساتين مكسيكية تقليدية. انظر! إنها زاهية. هناك الكثير من الخطوط الملونة على الفساتين. ترتدي الفتيات في المكسيك مثل هذه الفساتين أثناء الأعياد و الاحتفالات.

Mexican girls love bright colors. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear bright, colorful clothes.

تحب الفتيات المكسيكيات الألوان الزاهية. حتى عندما لا يحتفلون، فإنهم يرتدين ملابس ملونة زاهية.

People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. This is a sombrero – it's a traditional Mexican hat.

يرتدي الناس في المكسيك قبعات لحماية وجوههم من الشمس. وهذه قبعة السومبريرو - وهي قبعة مكسيكية تقليدية.



There are lots of different styles of sombrero. Some have stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have gold and silver on them.

هناك أنواع مختلفة من السومبريرو بعضها به خطوط، و البعض زاهي الألوان. حتى أن بعض القبعات بها ذهب وفضة.

Help your child read about clothes in Mexico.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن الملابس

Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

dresses - Mexican - wearing - feasts - colorful

Girls in Mexico are wearing traditional Mexican dresses. They're very ....(1).......... . There are lots of colorful stripes on the..........(2).......... . They wear them during ....(3).......... and celebrations. ....(4).......... girls love bright colors. People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. We have to wear a .... every day.
   a) tie   b) pen   c) bag   d) book
2. Our school uniform is really .... We like it.
   a) dirty   b) ugly   c) smart   d) bad
3. I bought a .... jacket.
   a) green new   b) cotton white   c) new green   d) white new
4. My favorite .... are the shirt and trousers.
   a) clothes   b) colors   c) food   d) sports
5. My favorite .... is blue.
   a) color   b) subject   c) drink   d) size

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. Mexico - hats - wear - People - in - .
....
2. like - uniform - I - school - really - our - .
....
3. girls - bright - Mexican - colors - love - .
....

Help your child deal...

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

At school, I wear a pale blue shirt and dark blue trousers. We have to wear a tie every day. It's dark blue with light blue stripes on it. The girls in my school also wear a pale blue shirt, but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue and white checked skirt. The girls don't have to wear a tie.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. At school I wear a pale blue ....
   a) shirt b) skirt c) shorts d) shoes
2. We have to wear a .... every day.
   a) dress b) hat c) belt d) tie

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Do the girls have to wear a tie? ....
4. What color is the tie? ....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ these girls are wearing dresses

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

My school uniform

Guiding words:

(boys - shirt - socks - trousers - girls - tie - blue shirt)

....

....

....

Review on Unit (3)

Clothes


T-shirt


scarf


sweater


necklace


pajamas




galabeya


pocket


sleeves


swimming shorts




spotted


striped


sunglasses

- She went to town to buy a sweater.
- I bought some sunglasses to wear on holiday.

Did you see your friends yesterday?


☺ - Yes, I did. ☹ - No, I didn't.

Order of adjectives



- I have a small new white cotton T-shirt.

How do I look?

Language

Phonics

Stories


/d/

played
enjoyed
cleaned

/t/

asked
promised
fixed


/ɪd/

waited
tidied
tasted

$10 \times 10 = 100$

$30 \times 20 = 600$

$50 \times 50 = 2500$

$38 \times 24 = 912$

- If you multiply any number by zero, the answer is zero!



Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

My favorite clothes

My favorite clothes are galabeys. Galabeyas are the most popular traditional Egyptian clothes. The galabeya is a long white robe. They are usually made from cotton. Galabeyas are beautiful and cool. Galabeyas have hidden pockets and long sleeves. We wear galabeyas in special festivals.

A trip to Al Fayoum

I'll go to Al Fayoum with my family tomorrow. We'll visit my uncle Ali and cousins. We need to pack our suitcases. I'll take my swimming shorts to swim in the pool. I'll take my sunglasses. It will be very sunny. I can't wait to go there and see them.

Clothes in Mexico

Girls in Mexico are wearing traditional Mexican dresses. They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on their dresses. They wear them during feasts and celebrations. Mexican girls love bright colors. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear bright, colorful clothes.

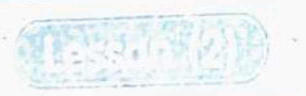
My school uniform

I'm Sara. I'm in primary five. I like my school uniform. We wear a short-sleeved white shirt and black trousers. We wear white socks and black shoes. When it is cold, we wear our blue sweaters.

Dictation on Unit (3)

Word	Meaning
	مشمس
	رحلة
	حمام سباحة - مسبح
	من صنع الإنسان
	مركز تسوق
	جميل - رائع
	خطوط
	يعد الحقيبة
	حذاء رياضي

Word	Meaning
	بيجامة
	سترة - بلوفر
	مقلم
	منقط
	بارد باعتدال - جميل
	نظارة شمسية
	قلادة - عقد
	حقيبة سفر
	كوفية - وشاح



Word	Meaning
	أكمام
	جيب
	حزام
	معلومات
	احتفال

Word	Meaning
	قفازات
	زي
	ثوب
	ملون
	مخفي



Word	Meaning
	عطوف - طيب
	أمين
	فقير

Word	Meaning
	مذهل
	المدينة
	عفاريت - الجن - أقزام

Word	Meaning
	زي مدرسي
	ذو أكمام قصيرة
	كرافتة - رابطة عنق

Word	Meaning
	أنيق
	قميص أزرق غامق
	سروال - بنطلون

Activities on Unit (3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mona goes to the party with her ....
   a) sister b) mother c) aunt d) grandma
2. Mona is wearing as a ....
   a) doctor b) nurse c) vet d) princess
3. Mona has white .... on her hands.
   a) dress b) gloves c) scarf d) skirt
4. Mona has a crown on her ....
   a) hand b) neck c) head d) leg

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. The .... is one of the traditional Egyptian clothes.
   a) galabeya b) belt c) crown d) pocket
2. Women wear .... around their necks.
   a) belts b) necklaces c) sweaters d) sneakers
3. It's very cold, so I'll take my ....
   a) sunglasses b) sweater c) shorts d) T-shirt
4. She's wearing a .... skirt.
   a) spot b) spotted c) spoil d) spots

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

favorite - suitcase - stripes - shorts - pajamas

I'll go on a trip to Al Fayoum tomorrow. I'll pack my (1)............. . I'll need to take my sunglasses and (2).............. because it will be hot and sunny. I'll take my (3).............. pajamas. I like wearing the ones with the (4).............. . I won't take my sweater. I'll stay there for seven days.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi! I'm Hany. I'm in grade five. I live in Cairo. I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Hany is in grade ....
   a) four b) five c) six d) three
2. Hany lives in ....
   a) Cairo b) Giza c) Aswan d) Tanta

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do the girls wear? ....
4. What can they wear when it is cold? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. went - I - bedroom - my - to - to - sleep - .

....

2. Why - Tarek - did - a suit - make - ?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I go to the library to .... (borrowing) books.
2. I .... (travel) to Luxor last year.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ cairo is the capital of Egypt

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words: **Our school uniform**

(uniform - white shirt - blue tie - winter - sweater)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

wear - sleeves - don't - shorts

Hani : What do you like to 1) .... in summer?
Sami : I like to wear T-shirts and 2) ....
Hani : Do you like T-shirts with long 3) .... ?
Sami : No, I 4) ....

Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

galabeya - robe - pockets - traditional

Adel : Hi, Ali. Can you tell me about some 1) ...... Egyptian clothes?
Ali : Sure. Many men wear the 2) ....
Adel : What is the galabeya?
Ali : It's a long white 3) .... with long sleeves.
Adel : Are there any 4) .... in it?
Ali : Yes, but they're hidden.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اقرأ واختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. Mona likes wearing .... clothes.
   a) cotton, old b) cotton, new c) white, cotton d) cotton, green
2. I wear .... on my feet.
   a) sneakers b) jackets c) coats d) skirts
3. I bought new swimming .... to swim in the pool.
   a) shorts b) jacket c) umbrella d) coat
4. I went outside .... my friend.
   a) help b) to help c) helps d) helping
5. She .... to a clothes shop to buy a dress yesterday.
   a) go b) goes c) went d) going

يستمع في نهاية الكتاب

Activities on Review (1)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hana's favorite fruit is ....
   a) mango b) apple c) banana d) fig
2. We have a mango tree in our ....
   a) school b) garden c) park d) farm
3. We make a lot of .... and dishes with mangoes.
   a) sports b) poems c) colors d) drinks
4. Mango grow during the .... season.
   a) summer b) winter c) fall d) spring

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. The .... makes shoes from leather.
   a) vet b) shoemaker c) dentist d) doctor
2. We wear hats to .... ourselves from the sun.
   a) protect b) sleep c) swim d) play
3. Farmers .... onions and potatoes.
   a) grow b) draw c) has d) play
4. I'm so hot! Let's go to sit in the ....
   a) shade b) desert c) sun d) moon

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

started - popular - star - hard - born

My favorite sports star is Mohamed Salah. He is a very (1).......... football player. He was .... (2).......... on 15th June in Gharbia. He is 1.75 tall. He .... (3).......... his early life to play for El Moqawloon in 2012. Then, he played for Chelsea and now he plays for Liverpool. He can speak English and Italian. He works .... (4).......... to achieve his goals. He is a fast and he scores a lot of goals.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many things we can do to live a healthier life. For example, we can include fruit and vegetables in our meals. They are healthy and delicious. Junk food (ماكولات جاهزة غير صحية). isn't good for us so we shouldn't eat it a lot. Also, try to do some exercise. Perhaps you love swimming or football. Any kind of exercise is good for you. You could ride your bike to school.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Exercise is .... for you.
   a) bad b) good c) harmful d) sad
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a) vegetables b) junk food c) fruit d) water

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why should we eat fruit and vegetables? ....
4. How could you go to school to be healthy? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. playing - I'm - good - football - at - .
2. healthy - your - What's - food - favorite - ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I don't have .... (some) mangoes.
2. Mona is bad at .... (write) stories.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ what's your favorite sport ....

8 Write an email of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب رسالة بريد الكترونية من (30) كلمة.

Your name is Seif. Your email address is Seif@yahoo.com. Your friend's name is Ramy and his email address is Ramy@yahoo.com

water pollution

Guiding words: (chemicals - rivers - organisms - crabs - homes - habitats)

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة



Unit (4) Looking after our world

الاعتناء بعالمنا

In this unit the student will ... — في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف......

- listen, read, research, and write about different landscapes.
  يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن المناظر الطبيعية المختلفة
- learn about Elephantine Island.
  يتعلم عن جزيرة إلفنتين
- use sentences in the past continuous.
  يستخدم جملًا في زمن الماضي المستمر
- learn and talk about eco-tourism in Egypt.
  يتعلم ويتكلم عن السياحة البيئية في مصر
- learn how to say three consonants together.
  يتعلم كيفية نطق ثلاثة حروف ساكنة معًا
- learn to correct spelling mistakes.
  يتعلم تصحيح الأخطاء الإملائية
- write a flyer about eco-tourism in Egypt.
  يكتب نشرة إعلانية عن السياحة البيئية في مصر

Lesson (1)

MY VISIT TO ELEPHANTINE ISLAND



Landscapes

مناظر طبيعية



coral reefs
شعاب مرجانية



mountain
جبل



island
جزيرة



forest
غابة



lake
بحيرة



waterfall
شلال



Places in Egypt

اماكن في مصر



Alexandria
مدينة الإسكندرية



Dahab
مدينة دهب



Nubian village
قرية نوبية

Help your child i

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic
sunset	غروب الشمس	shape	شكل	town	مدينة صغيرة
decorated	مُزيّن - مُزَخْرف	rare	نادر	village	قرية
calendar	تقويم - (نتيجة حائط)	fantastic	رائع	tombs	مقابر
famous	مشهور	quiet	هادئ	bright	ساطع - لامع
postcard	بطاقة بريدية	museum	متحف	reign	عهد - فترة حكم
particularly	بطريقة خاصة	traffic	حركة المرور	felucca	فلوكة

Elephantine Island جزيرة إلفنتين

Aswan Botanical Garden حديقة أسوان النباتية

Tombs of the Nobles مقابر النبلاء.



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة | *Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
miss	يشتاق	missed	understand	يفهم	understood
decorate	يُزين	decorated	find	يجد	found
travel	يسافر	traveled	leave	يغادر	left
wait	ينتظر	waited	see	يرى	saw

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expression	Arabic	Expression	Arabic
travel by	يسافر بواسطة	in fact	في الحقيقة
full of	مليء بـ	look at	ينظر إلى
through the desert	عَبْر الصحراء	See you soon!	أراك قريبًا!
lots of	كثير من	go for a walk	يذهب للتمشية



Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.


Aswan Botanical Garden


Temple of Philae

Hi Dalia!
How are you? I'm missing you! I'm on Elephantine Island and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's lots to see.
Yesterday, I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name. – we think it's the shape!
Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan.
In fact, all the island is full of history. After that, we went to the Aswan Museum. We were looking at all the old things from the island when we found a very rare calendar from the reign of Thutmose III.
But it's not only about history – it's a beautiful and calm place. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet, and the air is clean. We can go for long walks.

مرحبًا داليا!
كيف حالك؟ افتقدك كثيرًا. أنا في جزيرة إلفنتين، إنها المكان الأكثر روعة. إنها في أسوان وهناك الكثير لرؤيته. بالأمس كنت مسافرًا بالقارب إلى الجزيرة مع أصدقائي. كنا نحاول فهم اسم إلفنتين. نعتقد أنه الشكل!
جزيرة إلفنتين هي أقدم مكان في أسوان. في الواقع كل الجزيرة مليئة بالتاريخ. بعد ذلك ذهبنا إلى متحف أسوان. كنا ننظر إلى كل الأشياء القديمة من الجزيرة عندما وجدنا تقويمًا نادرًا جدًا من عهد تحتمس الثالث.
لكن الأمر لا يتعلق بالتاريخ فقط-إنه مكان جميل وهادئ حيث لا توجد حركة مرور لذلك فهي هادئة جدًا والهواء نقي. نستطيع الخروج للمشي لمسافات طويلة.

There are no forests but there are lots of trees, so it's quite green. The sunsets are fantastic, particularly from a felucca. We were walking in one of the Nubian villages this morning. They have beautiful brightly decorated houses. We had lunch there looking at the Nile. Tomorrow is our last morning, so we're going to walk to the Tombs of the Nobles through the desert. I'll be so sad to leave.
Can't wait to see you soon!
Nagwa

لا توجد غابات ولكن هناك الكثير من الأشجار، لذا فهي خضراء تمامًا. منظر غروب الشمس فيها رائع خاصة من الفلوكة.
كنا نتمشى في إحدى القرى النوبية هذا الصباح ولديهم منازل جميلة مزينة. تناولنا الغذاء هناك ونحن ننظر إلى النيل. غدًا هو
آخر صباح لنا هناك، لذلك قررنا أن نمشي لمقابر النبلاء عبر الصحراء. سأكون حزينًا جدًا عند المغادرة.
أتشوق لرؤيتك قريبًا!
نجوى

Help your child listen and read. ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Activities

ص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eman visited Elephantine .... last month.
   a) Park b) Island c) Garden d) Museum
2. Elephantine Island is the oldest part of ....
   a) Aswan b) Giza c) Cairo d) Luxor
3. The Island is full of .... and amazing sights.
   a) lakes b) temples c) pyramids d) history
4. You can visit the Aswan ....
   a) Temple b) Museum c) Dam d) Farm

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Elephantine Island is full of ....
   a) history b) art c) science d) English
2. We found a very rare calendar from the .... of Thutmose III.
   a) room b) reign c) hour d) row
3. I was traveling by .... to the island.
   a) boat b) donkey c) foot d) metro
4. Aswan has a .... garden.
   a) ocean b) boat c) plant d) botanical
5. There are a lot of coral .... in the sea.
   a) leaves b) fish c) beef d) reefs
6. The sunsets are fantastic, particularly from a .... on the Nile.
   a) shark b) felucca c) car d) bus

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

walks - decorated - sunsets - traffic - sad

Elephantine Island is a beautiful and calm place. There's no ....(1).......... , so it's very quiet and the air is clean. We can go for long ....(2).......... . There are no forests but there are lots of trees, so it's quite green. The ....(3).......... are fantastic, particularly from a felucca. There are Nubian villages. They have beautiful brightly ....(4).......... houses.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. a beautiful - Aswan - is - calm - and - place - .

....

2. by - traveling - I - boat - was - to - island - the - .

....

3. went - Yesterday, - we - the - to - Aswan Museum - .

....

4. Nagwa - have - Did - trip - a good - ?

....

5 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

A visit to Elephantine Island

Guiding words:

(Elephantine Island - oldest - part - boat - shape)

....

....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ the elephantine island is a beautiful place.

....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2)

What were you doing?

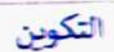
The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use the past continuous for something that happened and continued over a period of time in the past.**

نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر لنعبر عن شيء حدث واستمر لفترة زمنية في الماضي.

e.g. She was sleeping at 6 am yesterday.

Form 

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was You / We / They / اسم جمع + were	+ (verb + ing)

e.g. I was listening to the radio.

She was making her bed.

We were swimming in the sea.

They were playing football when Tom fell down.

Spelling rules

ملاحظات على إضافة (ing) للفعل

١-عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف (e-) غير المنطوق (قبله حرف ساكن) تحذف (e-) قبل إضافة (ing) أما إذا كان حرف (e-) منطوقًا لا تحذف ويضاف (ing).

make ⟶ making take ⟶ taking be ⟶ being

٢-عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد).

swim ⟶ swimming sit ⟶ sitting stop ⟶ stopping

Negative النفي

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was not + (wasn't)
You / We / They / اسم جمع + were not + (weren't)
+ (verb + ing)

e.g. He wasn't listening to music.

We weren't watching TV yesterday morning.

(Yes / No) question السؤال بـ (هل)

Was + (I - he - she - it - اسم مفرد) + (verb + ing) ...?
Were + (you - we - they - اسم جمع) + (verb + ing) ...?

e.g. Was he swimming in the lake? - Yes, he was.

Were they making a cake? - No, they weren't.

Wh- question السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Q.W. + was + (I - he - she - it - اسم مفرد) + (verb + ing) ...?
Q.W. + were + (you - we - they - اسم جمع) + (verb + ing) ...?

e.g. What was he doing yesterday evening?

- He was watching TV.

e.g. What were you doing last Friday evening?

- I was visiting my uncle.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

Yesterday morning	Yesterday evening
at 5 am yesterday	at 7 pm yesterday

Help your child use the past continuous.
ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم الماضي المستمر.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I .... listening to the radio in the morning.
   a) are b) was c) were d) is
2. We were .... a cake yesterday morning.
   a) make b) makes c) made d) making
3. She .... swimming in the sea.
   a) was b) does c) were d) am
4. Was .... listening to music?
   a) you b) we c) they d) he
5. Were they .... at 6 am?
   a) sleeps b) slept c) sleeping d) sleep
6. The fish was .... in the sea.
   a) swims b) swimming c) swim d) swam
7. What were you .... at 3 pm yesterday?
   a) did b) do c) does d) doing
8. We were .... a great time in Alexandria.
   a) have b) had c) having d) has
9. At 8 am she .... playing at school.
   a) were b) was c) are d) be

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. .... (Was) you listening to music at 3 o'clock yesterday?
2. No, I .... (was) watching TV.
3. Were they .... (listen) to the teacher?
4. Where was Sami .... (go) yesterday evening?
5. My sister .... (were) playing tennis at 5 p.m.
6. They .... (are) studying English at 6 p.m yesterday.
7. The people were .... (walk) in the park.
8. I was .... (have) breakfast at 7 a.m last Monday.
9. .... (Were) the cat running?
10. She was .... (study) at 6 p.m yesterday.

Lesson (3)

- ECO-TOURISM
- PRONUNCIATION

Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	journey	رحلة
local people	السكان المحليون	wildlife	الحياة البرية
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	environment	بيئة



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
important	هام/مهم	exciting	مثير
local	محلى	project	مشروع
eco-tourists	السياح المهتمون بالبيئة	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
culture	ثقافة	natural	طبيعي
monuments	آثار	job	وظيفة
historical	تاريخي	pollution	تلوث
UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو	eco-village	قرية بيئية



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
create	يبتكر	created
preserve	يحافظ على	preserved
damage	يتلف	damaged
stay	يمكث - يقيم	stayed
travel	يسافر	traveled
cause	يتسبب	caused

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
drive	يقود	drove
pay	يدفع	paid
learn	يتعلم	learnt
come	يأتي	came
think	يعتقد	thought
tell	يخبر	told

Help your child identify these words

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

travel by plane	يسافر بالطائرة	That sounds good!	هذا يبدو جيدًا!
look after	يعتني بـ	learn about	يتعلم عن
stay in	يقيم في	on foot	سيرًا على الأقدام
I see.	أفهمك.	pros and cons of	ميزات وعيوب
create from	ينتج من	give jobs	توفير فرص عمل

Tip!

"Eco" means relating to the environment.

كلمة (Eco) تعني له علاقة بالبيئة.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Presenter : Hello, Sherif. Thank you for coming to talk to us. Sherif is a tour guide in Hurghada. Tell us about eco-tourism, please. What is it?

مرحبًا، شريف. شكرًا لقدومك للتحدث معنا. شريف مرشد سياحي في الغردقة. أخبرنا عن السياحة البيئية من فضلك. ما هي؟

Sherif : Hello, Dalia. Eco-tourism is very exciting. It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people.

مرحبًا داليا. السياحة البيئية مثيرة للغاية. إنها السياحة التي تهتم بالبيئة وتساعد السكان المحليين.

Presenter : How does it help the environment and people?

كيف تساعد البيئة والناس؟

Sherif : Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution planes cause. They travel by train, on foot, or by bike.

لا يحب السياح المهتمون بالبيئة السفر بالطائرة بسبب التلوث الذي تسببه الطائرات. إنهم يسافرون بالقطار أو سيرًا على الأقدام أو بالدراجة.

Presenter : I see. Where do they stay?

فهمت. أين يقيمون؟

Sherif : They don't like big hotels. They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

إنهم لا يحبون الفنادق الكبيرة. ويقيمون في فنادق صغيرة محلية أو يدفعون للإقامة في منازل الناس.

Presenter : What do they do when they travel?

ماذا يفعلون عندما يسافرون؟

Sherif : They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

يحبون أن يتعلموا عن مشروعات الحياة البرية المحلية والثقافة المحلية.

Presenter : Can you give me an example?

هل يمكن أن تعطيني مثالًا؟

Sherif : Of course. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects in the Red Sea, preserving the coral reefs and the sea animals. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive and how they can be with the animals.

بالطبع. هنا في مصر، لدينا بعض المشروعات الرائعة جدًا في البحر الأحمر، للحفاظ على الشعاب المرجانية والحيوانات البحرية. يأتي السياح إلى البحر الأحمر ويخبرهم المرشدون أين يمكنهم الغوص وكيف يتعاملون مع الحيوانات.

Presenter : That sounds very good! Thank you for your time, Sherif.

هذا يبدو رائعًا جدًا! شكرًا على وقتك يا شريف.



A tourist diving in the Red Sea near a coral reef.

سائح يغوص في البحر الأحمر بالقرب من الشعاب المرجانية.



Siwa Oasis Tourism UNESCO Eco Village.

قرية واحة سيوه السياحية التابعة لليونسكو.

1. Eco-tourism is an exiting idea. It looks after the environment and helps local people.

   السياحة البيئية فكرة مدهشة. إنها تعتني بالبيئة وتساعد السكان المحليين.

2. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution that planes cause.

   لايحب السياح المهتمون بالبيئة السفر بالطائرة بسبب التلوث الذي تسببه الطائرات.

3. They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

   يقيم السياح المهتمون بالبيئة في فنادق محلية صغيرة أو يدفعون مقابل الإقامة في منازل الناس.

4. They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

   يحب السياح المهتمون بالبيئة التعرف على مشاريع الحياة البرية المحلية والثقافة المحلية.

5. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the coral reefs.

   هنا في مصر. لدينا بعض المشاريع الرائعة التي تعتني بالشعاب المرجانية.

6. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive.

   يأتي السائحون إلى البحر الأحمر ويخبرهم المرشدون السياحيون أين يمكنهم الغوص.

Tourism

السياحة

Good things

الأشياء الجيدة

1- It gives jobs for local people.

١- تقدم وظائف للسكان المحليين.

2- It helps people learn about new cultures.

٢- تساعد الناس أن يتعلموا عن ثقافات جديدة.

Bad things

الأشياء السيئة

1- It creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.

١- تُحدث الكثير من ثاني أكسيد الكربون الناتج عن الرحلات الجوية.

2- It damages the natural environment.

٢- تضر بالبيئة الطبيعية.

3- It damages historical places or monuments.

٣- تضر بالأماكن التاريخية أو الآثار.

Eco-tourism

السياحة البيئية

Pros

إيجابيات

1- It helps the environment.

١- تساعد البيئة.

2- It helps to protect the wildlife.

٢- تساعد في حماية الحياة البرية.

3- It doesn't cause much pollution.

٣- لا تسبب الكثير من التلوث.

Cons

سلبيات

1- It's not as comfortable as normal tourism,.

١- ليست مريحة كالسياحة العادية.

2- There are limited places you can reach without taking a plane.

٢- توجد أماكن محدودة يمكنك الوصول إليها بدون طائرة.

PRONUNCIATION

Three consonant clusters
ثلاثة أصوات ساكنة متتالية

Some words are hard to say because there are three consonants together.

بعض الكلمات صعبة النطق وذلك لوجود ثلاثة حروف ساكنة متتالية بها.

استمع وردد.

Listen and repeat.

scr-

screen	scream	screw	scratch
شاشة	يصرخ	مسمار (قلاووظ)	يخربش- يخدش

str-

street	strong	strawberry	string
شارع	قوي	فراولة	خيط

thr-

throat	throw	three	throne
حلق - حنجرة	يرمي	ثلاثة	العرش

Listening script ?

The king sat on his throne eating strawberries on a string. He was scratching his throat. He heard a scream. A strong man came to help.

Words that can be misspelled

Correct spelling	The misspelled	Correct spelling	The misspelled
milk	milc	lake	lakke
chocolate	chokolate	mountain	mountaine
ice skating	ise skating	sneakers	sneekers

1 Look and complete the words. انظر وأكمل الكلمات.



_ _ _een



_ _ _ _ing



_ _ _awberry



_ _ _one

2 Look and check (✓) the correct words. انظر وضع (✓) أمام الكلمة الصحيحة.



ise skating ( )
ice skating ( )



lakke ( )
lake ( )



cake ( )
cacke ( )



chokolate ( )
chocolate ( )



sneakers ( )
sneekers ( )



milk ( )
milc ( )

Help your child deal with...

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eco-tourists like to travel by ....
   a) planes b) rockets c) bikes d) cars
2. Eco-tourists pay to stay in ....
   a) people's houses b) zoos c) schools d) villages
3. Eco-tourists like to learn about .... wildlife projects.
   a) local b) twon c) city d) world
4. Tourism gives .... for local people.
   a) colors b) food c) jobs d) sports
5. Tourism helps people learn .... new cultures.
   a) at b) in c) by d) about
6. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the .... that planes cause.
   a) jobs b) solution c) pollution d) lotion

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

Egypt - cultures - places - Eco-tourists - coral reefs

Eco-tourism looks after the environment. ....(1).......... like to stay in small local hotels or in people's houses. In Egypt, they look after the ....(2).......... . Tourists love to learn about local ....(3).......... . There are many places in ....(4).......... that eco-tourists can visit.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Tourism can be helpful to many countries. It gives jobs for local people, and it can help people to learn about new cultures. Sometimes, tourism can be bad for many countries. Tourism can damage the natural environment and historical places, or monuments. Tourism can also create too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys. Many people are trying eco-tourism, because it looks after the environment and the people.

A) Choose the correct word.

1. The main idea of the text is ....
   a) tourism b) sports c) food d) drinks
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a) nature b) eco-tourism c) environment d) plane

B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why can tourism be helpful to many countries? ....
4. How can tourism create too much carbon dioxide? ....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. looks - after - Eco-tourism - environment - the - .
   ....
2. to - many - very - is - Tourism - important - countries - .
   ....
3. think - do - What - you - eco-tourism - of - ?
   ....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ eco-tourism is an exciting idea in egypt.

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words: Eco-tourism

(important - helps - jobs - hotels)

Help your child deal...

Lessons (4&5)

TABA: MY FAVORITE ECO-RESORT



Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسة

camp	معسكر	eco-holiday	إجازة / عطلة بيئية
hiking	التنزه - التجول (على الأقدام)	eco - lodges	مساكن صديقة للبيئة / نزل (بيئية)
fascinating	ساحر - خلاب	eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
structure	بناء - مبنى	eco-resort	منتجع سياحي بيئي



Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

culture	ثقافة	excellent	ممتاز
valley	وادي	fantastic = wonderful	رائع
Nubian ibex	تيس الجبل النوبي (وَعْل)	rare	نادر
flyer	نشرة إعلانية	sub-heading	عنوان فرعي
main heading	عنوان رئيسي	camping	التخييم - إقامة مخيمات
hut	كوخ	Nawamis village	قرية نواميس



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	Present		Past
dive	يغوص	dived	hike	يتمشى - يتجول	hiked
talk	يتكلم	talked	enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

an example of	مثال لـ	a part of	جزء من
good for	مفيد لـ / جيد لـ	way of life	طريقة حياة
take part in	يشارك في	stay in	يقيم في

Eco-tourism in Egypt

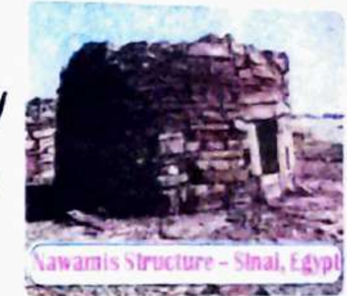
السياحة البيئية في مصر



Camp in Sinai, Egypt

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there.

تعتبر طابا مثالًا ممتازًا لجزء من مصر حيث تعمل فيه السياحة البيئية جيدًا. يمكنك أن تجد هناك الوديان والجبال والصحراء والبحر.



Nawamis Structure – Sinai, Egypt

You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex and rare birds. This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the environment.

يمكنك أن تجد حياة برية رائعة في طابا، مثل الوعل النوبي والطيور النادرة. وهذا جيدٌ جدًا للسياح المهتمين بالبيئة لأنه يمكّنهم من الذهاب والاستمتاع بالبيئة.

The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture.

السكان المحليون ودودون جدًا. لذلك يستطيع السياح المهتمون بالبيئة تناول وجبة معهم أو التحدث معهم عن ثقافتهم.

If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating! Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges. You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!

إذا كنت تحب التاريخ، فهناك الكثير في طابا، توجد قرية النواميس، وهي قرية ذات مباني مستديرة قديمة جدًا. إنها مباني رائعة. يمكن للسياح المهتمون بالبيئة في طابا الاستمتاع برياضة الغطس، والتنزه، والتخييم، ويمكنهم الإقامة في معسكرات ونُزل بيئية. يمكنك أن تجد كل شيء في طابا لقضاء إجازة رائعة!

Tip!:

An eco-destination is a place you are going to which is good for the environment. This is because people there look after the environment.

وجهة السفر البيئية هي مكان تذهب إليه ويكون مفيد للبيئة، لأن الناس هناك يعتنون بالبيئة.

Project

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.

- Look at the flyer advertising the eco-holiday in Taba.

انظر إلى النشرة الإعلانية التي تقوم بالدعايا لقضاء عطلة بيئية في طابا.

Main heading

sub-heading

Perfect eco-tourism in Egypt

Meet the local people

Talk to them about their way of life.

تحدث معهم عن طريقتهم في الحياة.



Enjoy the wildlife

Come and see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt! We have wonderful fish, birds, and animals.



تعال وشاهد الحياة البرية الأكثر روعة في مصر! لدينا اسماك وطيور وحيوانات رائعة.

Enjoy the local culture

Visit Nawamis, a 6,000- year-old village.

قُم بزيارة قرية النواميس، ذات ٦٠٠٠ عامًا.



photos



Stay in our comfortable huts

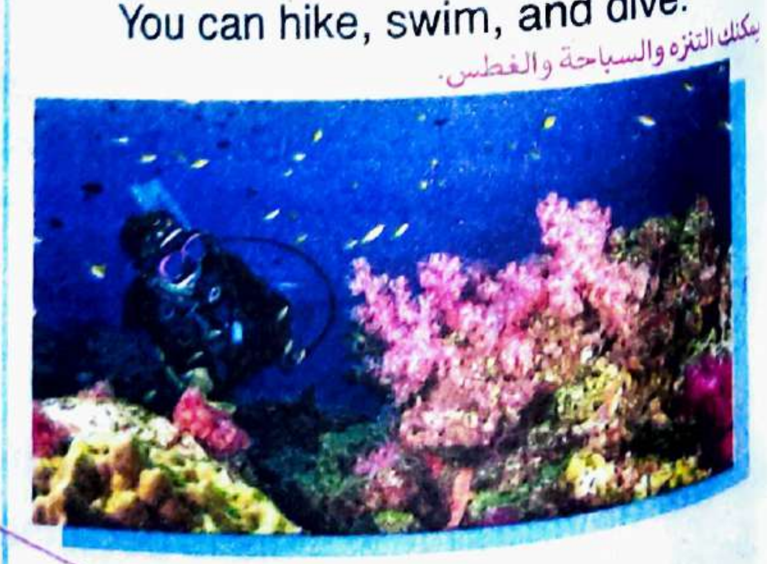
They are cool and eco-friendly

إنها رائعة وصديقة للبيئة.

Take part in exciting activities

You can hike, swim, and dive.

يمكنك التنزه والسباحة والغطس.



sentences

Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

excellent - Taba - Nubian - environment - valleys

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find ....(1).......... , mountains, desert, and the sea there. You can find fantastic wildlife in ....(2).........., like the ....(3).......... ibex, and rare birds. This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the ....(4)...........

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Eco-tourists can stay in camps and eco- ....
   a) mountains b) lodges c) valleys d) tombs
2. Local people in Taba are ....
   a) bad b) unkind c) sad d) friendly
3. Nawamis .... is in Taba.
   a) village b) lake c) city d) town
4. There are .... fish, birds, and animals in Taba.
   a) dirty b) ugly c) wonderful d) bad

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. people - local - The - friendly - are - very - .
....
2. stay - camps - Tourists - in - can - .
....
3. enjoy - You - Taba - can - in - wildlife - the - .
....
4. hike - Taba - You - in - can - .
....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there. If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating! Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges. You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!

A) Choose the correct word.

1. Nawamis village has very .... buildings.
   a) modern   b) bad   c) new   d) old
2. Taba is a part of ....
   a) France   b) China   c) England   d) Egypt

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text?

....

4. What can eco-tourists enjoy in Taba?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Taba

Guiding words:

(part - mountains - diving)

....

....

Review on Unit (4)


botanical garden


coral reefs


mountains


island

lake


waterfall



hotel

river


forest



dive


tourists


felucca

Vocabulary

Vocabulary

Looking after our world

Phonics

Language

Three consonant clusters


str-


strawberry

string


street


strong


scr-

screw

scream


scratch

screen

thr-

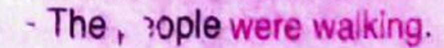

throne

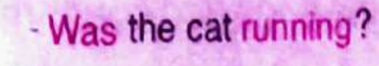

throat

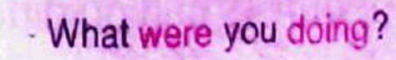

throw

three

- The fox was sleeping.


- The people were walking.
- He wasn't walking down the road.


- Was the cat running?


- What were you doing?
- I was reading a story.

Help your ...



Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words. اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

My visit to Elephantine Island

Yesterday, I was traveling to Elephantine island by boat with my family. We were trying to understand the Elephantine name! Elephantine Island is the most fantastic place in Aswan. Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. You can do lots of things there.

Eco-tourism

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the environment and gives jobs for local people. Tourists stay in small, local hotels. Eco-tourists like to learn about local wildlife and local culture. We should support eco-tourism.

Pros and cons of eco-tourism

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It helps to protect the wildlife. It looks after the environment. It helps local people. But eco-tourism isn't as comfortable as normal tourism.

Taba

Taba is good for eco-tourism. We can find valleys, desert and the sea there. Eco-tourists can do different activities there. They can enjoy hiking and diving. They can stay in eco-lodges. In Taba, local people are very friendly.

Dictation on Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning
	غابة
	بحيرة
	غروب الشمس
	مقابر
	الشعاب المرجانية

Word	Meaning
	جزيرة
	حبل
	حركة المرور
	فلوكة
	شلال

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning
	السياحة البيئية
	الحياة البرية
	يغطس
	فراولة
	العرش
	مسمار (قلاووظ)
	قوي
	يرمي / يُلقى

Word	Meaning
	البيئة
	فندق
	السياح المهتمون بالبيئة
	خيط
	حَلْق - حنجرة
	شاشة
	يصرخ
	شارع

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning
	مفيد لـ
	يقيم في
	منتجع بيئي
	ساحر - خلاب
	نادر
	كوخ
	وادي
	ثقافة
	يغوص

Word	Meaning
	نزل بيئية
	وادى
	نشرة إعلانية
	ممتاز
	التنزة - التجول (على الأقدام)
	رحلة بيئية
	صديق للبيئة
	التخييم
	رائع

Help your child dictate these

A tivities on Unit (4)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. My favorite place in .... is the Elephantine Island.
   a) China b) Japan c) USA d) Egypt
2. It's the most .... place.
   a) fantastic b) bad c) dirty d) far
3. It's a very beautiful and .... place.
   a) noisy b) busy c) calm d) ugly
4. The .... is full of history.
   a) lake b) sea c) river d) Island

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. They .... their class yesterday. It's very nice.
   a) found b) left c) decorated d) ate
2. He likes history. He likes to study .... things.
   a) old b) modern c) big d) new
3. Eco-tourism helps to protect the ....
   a) wildlife b) hospitals c) schools d) parks
4. I like fruit, I want to eat a ....
   a) string b) screw c) strawberry d) screen

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

air - traffic - green - calm - Aswan

There are a lot of wonderful places in Egypt. ....(1).......... is one of these places. Aswan is a beautiful and ....(2).......... place. There isn't much ....(3).........., so it's quiet and the ....(4).......... is clean. There are no forests but there are lots of trees so it's quite green.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Taba is my favorite eco-resort. You can find valleys, mountains, desert and the sea there. You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex and rare birds. The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture. Eco-tourists can enjoy diving, hiking and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges.

A) Choose the correct word.

1. You can find .... in Taba.
   a) lakes b) hills c) valleys d) rivers
2. The local people are very ....
   a) cruel b) unkind c) bad d) friendly

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What activities can eco-tourists enjoy doing in Taba? ....
4. Where can eco-tourists stay in Taba? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. were - TV - We - watching - .

....

2. think - What - do - you - of - eco-tourism - ?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I was .... (swim) at 5 p.m yesterday.
2. We .... (wasn't) making cakes.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ Was mona watching TV

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Guiding words: Eco-tourism

(important - new culture - comfortable)

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

Island - boat - How - Where - Do

Hend : Hello Rana! Where were you last Sunday?
Rana : Hi Hend! I was on Elephantine 1) ....
Hend : 2) .... is Elephantine Island located?
Rana : It's in Aswan.
Hend : 3) .... did you get there?
Rana : I went there by 4) ....

Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

hotels - pollution - eco-tourists - wildlife - eco-tourism

Ahmed : What do you think of eco-tourism?
Adam : Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the 1) .... and helps local people.
Ahmed : Do 2) .... like to travel by plane?
Adam : No. Because of the 3) .... that planes cause.
Ahmed : Where do eco-tourists stay in?
Adam : They stay in small, local 4) .. or pay to stay in people's houses.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hend was .... at 6 pm yesterday.
   a) cook b) cooks c) cooked d) cooking
2. .... he riding a bike?
   a) Does b) Did c) Was d) Has
3. Eco-tourists stay in small, local ....
   a) caves b) schools c) hotels d) parks
4. .... helps people learn about new cultures.
   a) Farming b) Tourism c) Diving d) Driving
5. Tourists come to the Red Sea to ....
   a) eat b) dive c) run d) leave

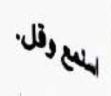
Unit (5) Jobs we do
وظائف نقوم بها



In this unit the student will ...
في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف.....

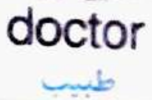
- listen, read, research, and write about different types of jobs in Ancient Egypt.
  يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الوظائف في مصر القديمة.
- understand ecosystems.
  يفهم الأنظمة البيئية.
- practice using the present simple to talk about routines.
  يتدرب على استخدام المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الروتين.
- practice using must to talk about obligation.
  يتدرب على استخدام must للتحدث عن الإلزام
- understand and discuss a traditional tale.
  يفهم ويناقش حكاية تقليدية.
- learn to say words with diphthongs.
  يتعلم نطق كلمات بها أصوات مزدوجة.
- understand pie charts.
  يفهم الرسم البياني الدائري.
- write about the pros and cons of different jobs.
  يكتب عن مزايا وعيوب الوظائف المختلفة.
- make a poster about teamwork.
  يقوم بعمل ملصق عن العمل الجماعي.

Listen and say.



fisherman
صياد سمك





doctor
طبيب



craftsman
حِرَفي



Jobs
وظائف



baker
خباز



scribe
كاتب



farmer
مزارع (فلاح)



teacher
مدرس - مُعلم

Extra vocabulary كلمات اضافيه

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
hieroglyphs	الكتابة الهيروغليفية	jewelry	مجوهرات	successful	ناجح
sculptures	منحوتات	trader	تاجر	list	قائمة
grains	حبوب - غلال	flax = linen	كتان	clay	صلصال
temple	معبد	wheat	قمح	gold	ذهب
medical school	مدرسة الطب	corn	ذرة	row	صف
Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	pharaohs	فراعنة	column	عمود
Ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	famous	مشهور	sign	لافتة - علامة
pots	أواني	queen	ملكة	medicine	دواء
female ruler	الملكة الحاكمة	records	سجلات	wood	خشب
expensive	غالي الثمن	paintings	لوحات مرسومة	fields	حقول

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الافعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
weave	ينسج	weaved
plant	يزرع	planted
clean	ينظف	cleaned
bake	يخبز	baked
use	يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs افعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew
keep	يحفظ	kept
spend	يقضي	spent
buy	يشتري	bought
sell	يبيع	sold

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expression	Meaning	Expression	Meaning
work hard	يعمل بجد	at home	بالمنزل
easy to learn	سهل التعلم	consist of	يتكون من
write down	يُدَّون	look after	يعتني بـ
take care of	يهتم بـ	important for	هام لـ
work outside	يعمل بالخارج	travel up and down the Nile	يبحر في النيل ذهابا وايابا

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Jobs in Ancient Egypt



Temple of Hatshepsut, female ruler of Egypt, 1473-1458 BCE

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers.

عمل الناس في مصر القديمة بجد. كان كل شخص لديه وظيفة. استطاعوا أن يعملوا كصيادين وخ...
معظم الناس عملوا كمزارعين.

Farmers worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

عمل الفلاحون في الحقول التي كانت بالقرب من بيوتهم وزرعوا المحاصيل، وعادة ما تكون حبوب...
والكتان. كما زرعوا الخضروات والفاكهة أيضًا.

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Fewer people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

وكان الحرفيون من المصريين القدماء ماهرين جدًا أيضًا. صنعوا لوحات جميلة ومجوهرات ذهبية ومنحوتات جميلة.
واعتادوا نسج ملابس جميلة وصنع أواني طهي ملونة. عمل ... من الناس ككتبة. وكان الكتبة يعرفون كيفية القراءة
والكتابة جيدًا. لم تكن الكتابة المصرية سهلة التعلم. و قضى الكتبة سنوات عديدة في تعلم الكتابة الهيروغليفية وكان هذا
مكلفًا جدًا.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

كانت نساء قدماء المصريين يعملن في البيت وكان بإمكانهن العمل بالخارج ايضا. كان النساء يقمن بطهي الوجبات وتنظيف
المنزل والاعتناء بأطفالهن. وكان بإمكان النساء نسج السلال وعمل الخبز وصناعة الصنادل. وكن يقمن ببيعهم في السوق
أيضًا. واستطعن حتى أن يصبحوا فراعنة. وكانت حتشبسوت إحدى الملكات المشهورة في مصر القديمة.

Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful!

كان الجميع في مصر القديمة يعرفون أن العمل مهم للحياة لذلك كان القدماء المصريون ناجحين جدًا!

Words with their description.

كلمات مع وصفها.



scribe

كاتب

People with this job were very important in Ancient Egypt. They could write everything down. They kept records and lists for important things.

أصحاب هذه الوظيفة كانوا مهمين في مصر القديمة. استطاعوا تدوين كل شئ. احتفظوا بالسجلات وقوائم للأشياء الهامة.



trader

تاجر

People who did this job traveled up and down the Nile. They bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen, and grains.

الناس الذين قاموا بهذه الوظيفة سافروا عبر النيل ذهابًا وإيابًا. اشتروا وباعوا الأشياء مثل الذهب والخشب والكتان والحبوب.



craftsman

حِرَفِي

If you were good at making things, this was a good job for you. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold.

إذا كنت جيد في عمل الأشياء فتلك الوظيفة ستكون جيدة لك. فأصحاب هذه الوظيفة صنعوا أشياء من الصلصال والخشب والذهب.



hieroglyphs

الهيروغليفية

A system of writing which consisted of about 500 signs, written in rows and columns. People used it in Ancient Egypt.

نظام الكتابة الذي كان يتكون من حوالى ... علامة مكتوبة في صفوف وأعمدة. استخدمها الناس في مصر القديمة.



doctor

طبيب - طبيبة

Both men and women could do this job, too. You had to go to medical school to have this job. You had to look after people who were ill and make medicine.

استطاع كلًا من الرجال والنساء القيام بهذه الوظيفة أيضا. كان يجب أن تذهب إلى مدرسة الطب لتمارس هذه الوظيفة. كان عليك أن تعتني بالناس المرضى وأن تقوم بعمل الأدوية.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Most people worked as ....
   a) farmers   b) scribes   c) traders   d) doctors
2. Farmers worked in ....
   a) homes   b) fields   c) hospitals   d) seas
3. Farmers planted crops, usually .... like wheat, corn and flax.
   a) vegetables   b) fruits   c) grains   d) wood
4. .... could write everything down.
   a) Doctors   b) Craftsmen   c) Farmers   d) Scribes

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

pots - weave - scribes - well - gold

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good. They made beautiful paintings, and beautiful 1) .... jewelery. They used to 2) .... beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking 3) .... Fewer people worked as 4) .... Scribes knew how to read and write well.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. He is a .... He works in a hospital.
   a) teacher   b) doctor   c) baker   d) scribe
2. A .... is a person who keeps records and lists for important things.
   a) scribe   b) trader   c) teacher   d) fisherman
3. .... is a system of writing.
   a) Trade   b) Farming   c) Hieroglyphs   d) Fishing
4. .... buy and sell things.
   a) Vets   b) Craftsmen   c) Doctors   d) Traders
5. Women in Ancient Egypt worked .... home.
   a) in   b) at   c) by   d) on

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. how - Scribes - read - to - knew - well - write - and - .

....

2. fruit - plant - Farmers - could - vegetables - and - .

....

3. were - Ancient - successful - very - Egyptians - .

....

4. become - could - Women - pharaohs - .

....

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. They worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "Ancient" means ....

   a) new b) far c) old d) modern

2. Farmers worked in ....

   a) fields b) schools c) restaurants d) hospitals

B) Answer the following questions.

1. What crops did farmers grow? ....
2. Did everyone have a job in Ancient Egypt? ....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

➪ what jobs did people in Ancient Egypt do

....

(2) CLIL: SCIENCE

Ecosystems



a desert ecosystem
النظام البيئي الصحراوي



a freshwater ecosystem
النظام البيئي لمياه العذبة



a rockpool ecosystem
النظام البيئي لبرك المياه الصخرية



a marine ecosystem
النظام البيئي البحري

Living things
كائنات حية



crab
سرطان البحر / كابوريا



insect
حشرة



tree
شجرة



fish
سمكة

seaweed
نبات بحري

Non-living things
كائنات غير حية



rocks
صخور



sunlight
ضوء الشمس

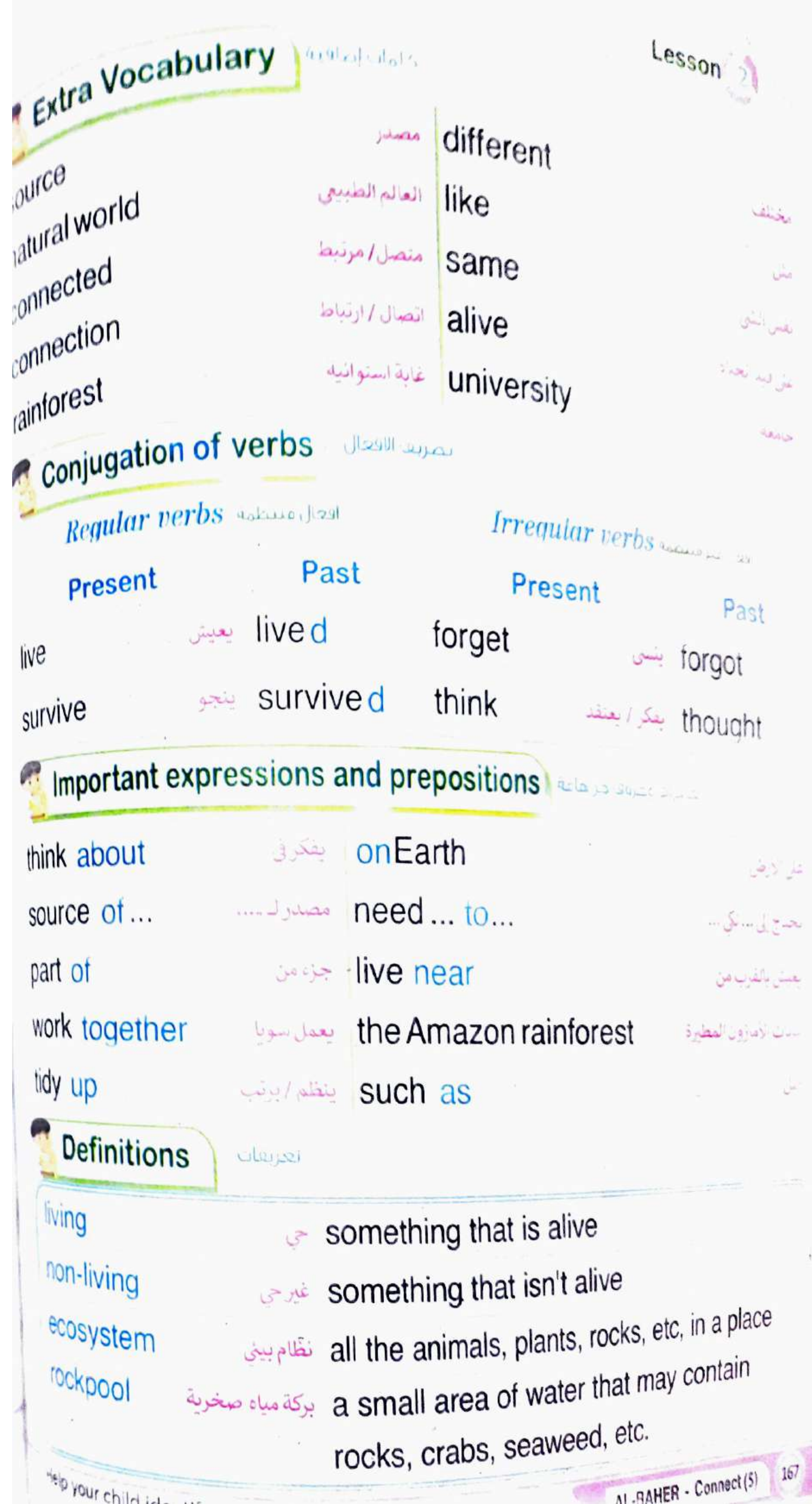


sand
رمال



water
مياه

Help your child identify these words. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات



Extra Vocabulary

source	مصدر	different	مختلف
natural world	العالم الطبيعي	like	مثل
connected	متصل / مرتبط	same	نفس الشيء
connection	اتصال / ارتباط	alive	
rainforest	غابة استوائية	university	جامعة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived
survive	ينجو	survived

Irregular verbs

Present		Past
forget	ينسى	forgot
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought

Important expressions and prepositions

think about	يفكر في	on Earth	على الأرض
source of ...	مصدر لـ	need ... to...	يحتاج إلى ... لكي ...
part of	جزء من	live near	يعيش بالقرب من
work together	يعمل سويا	the Amazon rainforest	غابات الأمازون المطيرة
tidy up	ينظم / يرتب	such as	مثل

Definitions تعريفات

living	حي	something that is alive
non-living	غير حي	something that isn't alive
ecosystem	نظام بيئي	all the animals, plants, rocks, etc, in a place
rockpool	بركة مياه صخرية	a small area of water that may contain rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc.

Listen and read. ستمع واقرأ.

What is an ecosystem? ما هو النظام البيئي؟



a marine ecosystem



a freshwater ecosystem

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living and non-living things is called an ecosystem. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight. All these things work together to make an ecosystem. There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.

a desert ecosystem



a rockpool ecosystem



كل شيء في العالم الطبيعي مترابط. هذا الترابط بين الكائنات الحية وغير الحية يسمى النظام البيئي. من الممكن أن تكون الأنظمة البيئية صغيرة مثل بركة مياه صخرية أو كبيرة جدًا مثل غابة الأمازون المطيرة. الكائنات الحية في النظام البيئي للبرك الصخرية هي الأسماك وسرطان البحر و الأعشاب البحرية. الكائنات غير الحية هي الصخور والمياه والرمال وضوء الشمس. تعمل هذه الأشياء معًا لتكوّن نظامًا بيئيًا. هناك الكثير من الأنظمة البيئية المختلفة على الأرض.

Write the words in the correct group.

crab - rock - insect - sand - fish - water

Living things	Non-living things
....	....
....	....
....	....

Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

seaweed - rockpool - water - connection - ecosystem

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living and non-living things is called an 1)................................. Ecosystems can be small, like a 2)..., or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and 3)................................. The non-living things are rocks, 4)................................, sand, and sunlight.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Everything in the natural world is ....
   a) connected b) connect c) disconnected d) remote
2. Trees and animals are .... things.
   a) non-living b) living c) flying d) dead
3. "Living" is something that is ....
   a) dead b) died c) endangered d) alive
4. The water in the Nile is ....
   a) dangerous b) saltwater c) sweet water d) freshwater
5. .... are non-living things.
   a) Trees b) Rocks c) Children d) Birds

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. the same - all - Are - ecosystems - ?

....

2. is - the natural - in - world - Everything - connected - .

....

3. to - do - What - need - you - survive - ?

....

Help yo

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Form التكوين

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع + inf. مصدر

e.g. I eat fruit. e.g. We catch a bus.

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + inf. + (s / es / ies)

e.g. He eats fruit. - Ali catches a bus. - She flies a plane.

Spelling rules

عندما يكون الفاعل (اسم مفرد ,He, She, It):

- نضيف (es) للفعل إذا انتهى بـ (o, sh, ch, x, ss).

go → goes watch → watches

- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (y) وقبله حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ونضيف (ies).

study → studies fly → flies

- أما إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (y) وقبله حرف متحرك نضيف (s) فقط.

play → plays

words الكلمات الدالة

ways	دائمًا	usually	عادةً	often	غالبًا
metimes	أحيانًا	every (day, ...)	كل (يوم،..)	never	أبدًا

Dina always plays basketball.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mrs Soha .... in a school.
   a) work b) working c) works d) to work
2. We .... computer games at the weekend.
   a) play b) plays c) playing d) to play
3. I .... yogurt and cheese for breakfast.
   a) eats b) to eat c) eat d) eating
4. Hany .... the bus to Cairo every morning.
   a) to catch b) catch c) catches d) catching
5. I .... fruit.
   a) eat b) eats c) to eat d) eating
6. The manager .... the restaurant every day.
   a) open b) opening c) opens d) to open
7. Mona .... the vegetables with a sharp knife.
   a) to cut b) cutting c) cut d) cuts
8. Hamza .... a plane.
   a) flies b) to fly c) fly d) flying
9. I .... to work at 10 am every day.
   a) drive b) drives c) to drive d) driving
10. My boss .... me to prepare the vegetables.
    a) ask b) to ask c) asks d) asking

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I .... (eats) fruit.
2. Heba .... (drive) to work every day.
3. We .... (plays) tennis after school.
4. Ali .... (want) to be a teacher.
5. Sami .... (fly) a plane.
6. Mona .... (catch) the bus in the morning.
7. They .... (cooks) lots of delicious food.
8. Walid .... (look) after hippos.
9. Nadim .... (tidy) up the kitchen.
10. Nahla .... (do) her homework.

Must / Mustn't يجب أن / يجب ألا

Subject فاعل + must + inf. المصدر

نستخدم (must + inf) للتعبير عن الضرورة لفعل شيء.

e.g. I must do my homework.

Subject فاعل + mustn't + inf. المصدر

نستخدم (mustn't + inf) للتعبير عن المنع والحظر.

e.g. You mustn't walk on the grass.

Walid looks after hippos. He must make sure they are happy and healthy. He must prepare their food. He must give them fresh water to drink. He must give them a bath. He must even clean their teeth!



Help your child use must / mustn't for obligation.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم must / mustn't للتعبير عن الإلزام.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I .... do my English homework.
   a) must b) mustn't c) am d) is
2. You .... walk on the grass.
   a) aren't b) haven't c) must d) mustn't
3. Sara .... wake her sick sister up.
   a) don't b) must c) mustn't d) aren't
4. We .... look after the environment.
   a) have b) must c) mustn't d) aren't
5. I .... be quiet in the library.
   a) must b) shouldn't c) can't d) mustn't
6. You must .... your hands.
   a) wash b) washes c) washing d) washed
7. We mustn't .... left.
   a) turns b) turning c) turned d) turn
8. He .... use his cell phone in the class.
   a) should b) must be c) must d) mustn't
9. You mustn't .... your bike here.
   a) ride b) riding c) rode d) rides
10. Ali .... tidy up his room. - It's messy.
   a) must b) shouldn't c) hasn't d) mustn't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. I must .... (does) my homework.
2. You mustn't .... (talks) in the library.
3. Walid must .... (giving) hippos a bath.
4. Mona is ill. She .... (mustn't) see the doctor.
5. They .... (must) forget their books at school.
6. You must .... (helped) your mother.
7. I .... (must) smoke in the hospital.
8. We must .... (looks) after hippos.

Lesson (3) THE ANT AND THE GRASSHOPPER

Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
ant	نملة	fence	سور / سياج	boring	ممل
grasshopper	جرادة - جندب	buzz	يطن / أزيز (صوت النحل)	strange	غريب
bee	نحلة	relaxing	مسترخي	suddenly	فجأة

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
butterfly	فراشة	fall	الخريف	conversation	محادثة
insect	حشرة	winter	الشتاء	animal keeper	حارس حيوانات
lazy	كسول	spring	الربيع	police officer	ضابط شرطة
future	المستقبل	summer	الصيف	surprised	مندهش
crops	محاصيل	dentist	طبيب الأسنان	lovely	جميل - رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
rest	يرتاح	rested
harvest	يحصد	harvested
hop	ينط - يقفز	hopped
carry on	يواصل - يستمر	carried on
prefer	يفضل	preferred
buzz	يطن	buzzed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
shine	تشرق	shone
eat	يأكل	ate
fly	يطير	flew
spend	يقضي	spent
understand	يفهم	understood
teach	يُعلم	taught

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expression	Meaning	Expression	Meaning
full of	مليئة - مملوءة بـ	work hard	يعمل بجد
rest against	يستريح مستندا على	have fun	يمرح

knock on
look over
carry on

come in يستمر في

يدخل

استمع واقرأ.

Listen and read.

The ant and the grasshopper النملة والجرادة



It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are buzzing and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard.

إنه الربيع والشمس مشرقة. و الحقول والحدائق مليئة بالزهور لتأكل منها الحيوانات والحشرات. إنه يوم جميل. يطن النحل وتطير الفراشات في الشمس. ومع ذلك يعمل النمل بجد.

The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing. He doesn't like to work. Today, he is resting against a tree when he hears a strange sound. He wants to find out what it is. He looks over the garden fence.



يقضي الجراد الكسول معظم وقته في الاسترخاء. فهو لا يحب أن يعمل. اليوم يستريح متكئًا على شجرة ويسمع صوتًا غريبًا. ويريد أن يعرف ما هذا الصوت. وينظر من فوق سور الحديقة.

"What are you doing, Ant?" asks the grasshopper. "I'm working," replies the ant. "But it's a beautiful day," says the grasshopper. "Why don't you stop working and we can have some fun?"
"Thank you, but I need to carry on with my work," says the ant.



الجراد: ماذا تفعلين أيتها النملة؟
النملة: أنا أعمل.
الجراد: لكنه يوم جميل، لم لا تتوقفين عن العمل ويمكننا أن نمرح؟
النملة: شكرًا لك، لكنني بحاجة إلى مواصلة عملي.



"But working is so boring," replies the grasshopper. "Maybe," says the ant, "but it's something we all have to do. We must think about the future, not just today." The grasshopper didn't understand and so he just hops away.

الجراد: لكن العمل مُمّل.
النملة: ربما، لكنه شيء يجب علينا جميعًا القيام به. يجب أن نفكر في المستقبل وليس اليوم فقط.
لم يفهم الجراد لذا قفز بعيدًا.



Soon, it is fall. The ant has worked hard and all her crops have grown well. The ant doesn't stop working until she has harvested all the food and taken it inside for the winter.

وسريعًا حل فصل الخريف. لقد عملت النملة بجد ولمت جميع محاصيلها بشكل جيد. لم تتوقف النملة عن العمل حتى حصدت كل الطعام وأخذته للداخل من أجل الشتاء.



Soon, it is winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any. Suddenly, he remembers the conversation he had with the ant. He knocks on the ant's door."I understand you now, Ant. You worked and now you have food. I didn't work and now I'm hungry." "Come in," says the ant. "Yes, it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too."

وسريعًا حلّ فصل الشتاء والطقس بارد جدًا. والجراد جائع وليس لديه أي طعام ولا يمكنه العثور عليه.
و فجأة تذكر المحادثة التي أجراها مع النملة. وقام بطرق باب النملة وقال لها " أنا أفهمك الآن أيتها النملة. أنت عملتِ والآن لديك طعام. وأنا لم أعمل والآن أنا جائع". قالت له النملة " تفضل بالدخول. نعم من الجيد أن تمرح، ولكن من المهم جدًا أيضًا أن تعمل بجد".

Answer the following questions:

اجب عن الأسئلة الآتية:

1. Why is the grasshopper surprised?
2. What do the ant and the grasshopper teach us?
3. Will the grasshopper work hard next...

PRONUNCIATI

Diphthongs (مدغمة

ان صوتًا واحدًا:

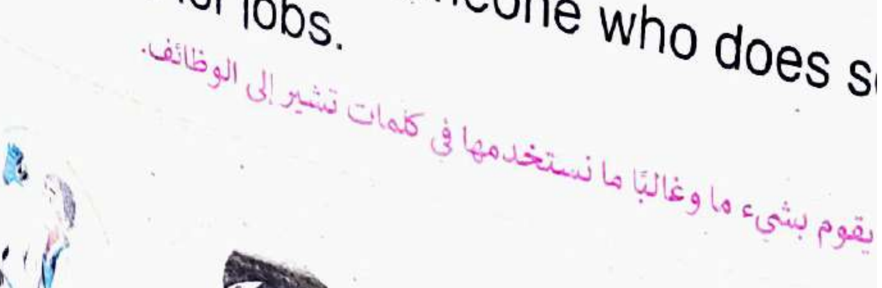
Listen and repeat.

/aʊ/		/aɪ/	
down	إلى أسفل / أدنى	why	لماذا
town	مدينة	try	يحاول
brown	لون بني	eye	عين
mouse	فأر	buy	يشتري
loud	صاخب	light	فاتح - ضوء

Suffix (-ist)

The suffix means someone who does s
use it in words for jobs.

يقوم بشيء ما وغالبًا ما نستخدمها في كلمات تشير إلى الوظائف.



Pie charts المخططات الدائرية



This is a pie.



This is a pie chart.

A pie chart is a way of showing information.

●● Look at the chart.

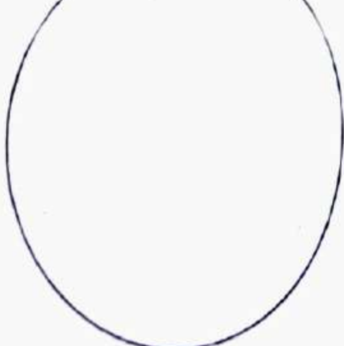
What job do you want to do?

biologist	30
scientist	10
receptionist	10
journalist	30
pianist	20

biologist
scientist
receptionist
journalist
pianist

Show this information on the chart.

Sport	No. of players
football	15
basketball	25
volleyball	30
tennis	10
swimming	20



Help your child use the pie chart.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم المخطط الدائري.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The grasshopper was ....
   a) lazy b) fast c) big d) slow
2. The grasshopper thought work is ....
   a) fun b) interesting c) boring d) exciting
3. Now, it's winter and it is very ....
   a) cold b) hot c) warm d) windy
4. The .... is hungry.
   a) grasshopper b) bee c) lizard d) ant

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

grasshopper - cold - ant - hungry - food

It was winter and it was very cold. The grasshopper was).......................... . He didn't have any).......................... and he couldn't find any. The).......................... worked hard and now she has food. The).......................... didn't work and now he is hungry.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. gardens - flowers - The - are - of - full - .

....

2. ant - is - hard - The - working - .

....

3. a - is - Ahmed - receptionist - .

....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are buzzing and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard. The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing.

A) Choose the correct answer.

The .... are full of flowers.

a) gardens b) clubs c) schools d) hospitals

The grasshopper is ....

a) fast b) kind c) slow d) lazy

b) Answer the following questions.

What are the ants doing?

....

How does the grasshopper spend most of his time?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇒ it's important to work hard

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

The lazy grasshopper

Guiding words:

(lazy - boring - winter)

....

....

....

Lessons (4 & 5)

WRITING / PROJECT

Key Vocabulary كلمات رئيسية

operation عملية جراحية	teamwork عمل جماعي	teammates زملاء فريق العمل
concert حفل موسيقي	computer programmer مبرمج كمبيوتر	

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

sick مريض	team فريق	injured مصاب
indoors بالداخل	dirty قذر - متسخ	report
outdoors بالخارج	solution حل	experiment تجربة علمية
part جزء	the worst الأسوأ	distance مسافة
aim هدف	vet طبيب بيطري	science علوم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
scare	scared
solve	solved
prefer	preferred
agree	agreed

Irregular verbs

Present	Past
bring	brought
meet	met
win	won
think	thought

Important expressions and prepositions

solve a problem	keen on
get up	good at
make friends	an experiment
work with	work out
disagree with	check on

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Unit (5)

Listen and read.

ستمع واقرأ.



My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured, I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people bring their animals to me. If an animal needs an operation, the room has to be very, very clean.

اسمي رنا. أعمل مع الحيوانات وأحب وظيفتي. إذا كانت الحيوانات مريضة أو مصابة، أقوم بمساعدتهم على التحسن. في بعض الأيام أعمل بالداخل ويحضر الناس حيواناتهم إليّ. إذا احتاج حيوان إلى عملية جراحية، يجب أن تكون الحجرة نظيفة جدا جدا.

On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind! What's the worst part of the job? It's when an animal gets sick in the night and I have to get out of bed!

في أيام أخرى، أذهب إلى بيوت أو مزارع الناس لفحص حيواناتهم. من الممكن أن تكون بعض الأماكن متسخة جدا ولكن لا أمانع! ما أسوأ جزء في الوظيفة؟ إنه عندما يمرض حيوان في الليل واضطر إلى أن انهض من فراشي!

Hello, I'm Sherif. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare me! I'm not keen on being outside, so I wanted an office job. When I was young, I loved playing computer games.

مرحبًا، أنا شريف. عندما كنت صغيرًا، علمت أنني لا أريد أن أعمل مع الحيوانات. إنها تخيفني. إنني لست متحمسًا لأن أكون بالخارج، لذلك كنت أريد وظيفة مكتبية. عندما كنت صغيرًا، كنت أحب لعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر.



I also really enjoy solving problems. So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree, but we work out the best solutions.

أنا أيضًا أستمتع حقًا بحل المشاكل. لذلك في عملي أقوم بكلا الأمرين! أنا أيضًا أستمتع بالعمل مع الأشخاص الآخرين. يوجد ١٦ شخصًا في فريقي. نحن لا نتفق دائمًا ولكننا نتوصل لأفضل الحلول.

Writing about a job.

الكتابة عن وظيفة.

When you're thinking about a job, it's important to think about what you like and dislike. Think about ....

عندما تفكر في وظيفة، من المهم ان تفكر في ما تحب وما لا تحب. فكر في ....

- being indoors or outdoors — أن تكون بالداخل أو الخارج
- traveling long distances — السفر لمسافات طويلة
- getting up very early — الاستيقاظ مبكرًا جدًا
- writing reports — كتابة تقارير
- meeting / talking to new people — مقابلة أو التحدث مع أشخاص جدد

It's also important to think about what you're good at and what you're not so good at. Think about ...

من المهم أيضا أن تفكر فيما تجيده وما لا تجيده. فكر في....

- solving problems — حل المشاكل
- helping sick people / animals — مساعدة الناس أو الحيوانات المريضة
- making new friends — تكوين صداقات جديدة
- reading lots of information — قراءة الكثير من المعلومات
- working in a team — العمل في فريق

What job do / don't you want to do?

When I'm older, I want to be a .... because .... I think this is a good job for me because I like .... I'm good at .... and I enjoy ....

I don't want to be a .... because I'm not good at ....

Also, I don't really enjoy ....

Model

When I'm older I want to be a doctor because I like being indoors.
I think it is a good job for me because I like helping sick people
I'm good at checking people and I enjoy working hard

Help your child write about a job he / she wants to do.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن الوظيفة التي يرغب في القيام بها.



Project

- Look and read.

Teamwork العمل الجماعي



I work in a team in science when we're doing an experiment.

أعمل في فريق في مادة العلوم عندما نقوم بعمل تجربة.



I work in a team when I'm playing football.

أعمل في فريق عندما ألعب كرة القدم.



I work in a team when I help Mom in the kitchen at home.

أعمل في فريق عندما أساعد أمي في المطبخ بالمنزل.



I work in a team for the school concert.

أعمل في فريق من أجل حفل المدرسة الموسيقي.

When you work in a team, you work with other people to do something together. For example, the aim of a football team is to win. You work with your teammates to do this. You can't win a football match by yourself!

عندما تعمل في فريق، فأنت تعمل مع الأشخاص الآخرين للقيام بعمل شيء معًا. على سبيل المثال، فإن هدف فريق كرة القدم هو الفوز. أنت تعمل مع زملائك في الفريق لتحقيق ذلك. ولا يمكنك الفوز بمباراة كرة القدم بمفردك!

Think! فكر!

What happens if you disagree with a teammate? How do you work out a solution?

ماذا يحدث إذا لم تتفق مع زميلك في الفريق؟ كيف تحل الموقف؟

Activities

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

plants - job - better - animals - sick

My name's Rana. I work with ....(1).......... and I love my ....(2).......... If animals are ....(3).......... or injured, I help to make them ....(4)..........

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. She is a .... She works with animals.
   a) doctor b) vet c) baker d) teacher
2. He is a .... He loves the computer.
   a) doctor b) vet c) computer programmer d) pianist
3. If an animal needs an ...., the room has to be very clean.
   a) egg b) apple c) orange d) operation
4. You should work .... the best solution.
   a) to b) out c) up d) down
5. I work in a .... when I help mom in the kitchen.
   a) team b) class c) library d) hospital

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. science - a - I - team - work - in - .

....

2. want - to - I - work - animals - with - .

....

3. very - She - up - early - likes - getting - .

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hello, I'm Sherif. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. ______ scare me! I'm not keen on being outside, so I wanted an office job. When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems. So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Sherif wanted a/an .... job.
   a) office   b) outside   c) outdoor   d) farm
2. Sherif enjoys working with other ....
   a) animals   b) birds   c) plants   d) people

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did Sherif love playing? ....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "   " refer to? ....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

rana works with animals

....

6 Write a text of about (   ) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

A job you want

Guiding words:

(journalist - a good job - writing reports - traveling)

....

....

....

....

Review on Unit (5)

Jobs

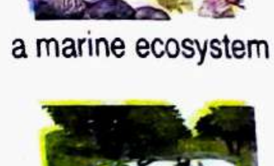

doctor


craftsman


trader



driver


a marine ecosystem


a desert ecosystem


a freshwater ecosystem


a rockpool ecosystem


fisherman


scribe


farmer

teacher


ant


grasshopper

hieroglyphs

tour guide


baker

Jobs we do



/aʊ/


down


town

/aɪ/ /ɔɪ/



why


eye


boy


enjoy

I eat fruits.

She catches a bus.

I must do my homework.

You mustn't walk on the grass.

The suffix -ist


biologist


journalist


pianist


scientist

Math

a pie chart



Writing Corner

* **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.** اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

Women's jobs in Ancient Egypt

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home. They could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market. Hatshepsut was a famous queen in Ancient Egypt.

A job you want

When I'm older, I want to be a journalist because I like writing reports. I think this is a good job for me because I like reading lots of information. I'm good at reporting news and I enjoy meeting new people. I love this job. I want to be like my father.

Teamwork

Teamwork is very important. I work in a team in science when we're doing an experiment. I work in a team when I'm playing football. You can't win a football match by yourself! You work with your teammates to do this.

Dictation on Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning
....	طبيب
....	جزّار
....	تاجر
....	كاتب
....	صياد سمك
....	مصر القديمة

Word	Meaning
....	خباز
....	فلاح - مزارع
....	مدرس
....	الكتابة الهيروغليفية
....	ملكة
....	سجلات

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning
....	النظام البيئي البحري
....	النظام البيئي الصحراوي
....	النظام البيئي للمياه العذبة
....	النظام البيئي للبرك الصخرية
....	كائنات حية
....	كائنات غير حيّة

Word	Meaning
....	حشرة
....	أعشاب بحرية
....	رمل
....	سرطان البحر
....	ماء
....	ضوء الشمس

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning
....	نملة
....	جرادة
....	نحلة

Word	Meaning
....	يطن
....	ينط - يقفز
....	فراشة

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning
....	عملية جراحية
....	يحل
....	زميل في فريق العمل
....	حفل موسيقي

Word	Meaning
....	العمل الجماعي
....	مريض
....	مبرمج كمبيوتر
....	طبيب بيطري

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (5)

في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

ضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Hana is a ....
   a) vet b) teacher c) nurse d) pianist
2. Hana works with .... and she loves he
   a) plants b) animals c) dentists d) people
3. Hana helps to make sick animals ....
   a) bad b) ill c) injured d) better
4. Some days Hana works .... and people bring their animals to
   a) outside b) on farms c) inside d) at people's hous

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

جابة الصحيحة:

1. .... buy and sell thi
   a) Nurses b) Doctors c) Teachers d) Traders
2. A .... help sick people to get be
   a) vet b) teacher c) doctor d) scribe
3. I always .... on the door before I enter
   a) liked b) knocked c) worked d) looked
4. Plants need .... and water to make foo
   a) oil b) sunlight c) ink d) clothes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

أ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

busy - ago - grasshopper - hungry - hardworking

A long time ago, an ant and a grasshopper lived in a garden. The ......(1)...... always spent his time relaxing in the garden. His friend, the ant, was always ......(2)...... . The grasshopper always made fun of the ......(3)...... ant. Soon, the winter came. It was too cold, and the grasshopper was ......(4)...... . The ant was kind and let the grasshopper come in and gave him food.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

<u>Ancient</u> Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut. Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The underlined word "   " means very ....

   a) tall   b) high   c) old   d) new

2. The text is about " .... in Ancient Egypt".

   a) men   b) craftsmen

   c) scribes   d) women

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What could women make and sell at the market?

   ....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

   ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. very - People - worked - in - hard - Ancient Egypt - .

   ....

2. at - I'm - good - making - friends - new - .

   ....

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Heba ………………………(catch) the bus every day.
2. We must ………………………(studies) hard.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ ahmed works in a hospital in cairo.

………………………………………………………………

8 Write an email of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب رسالة بريد الكترونية من (30) كلمة.

Your name is Ali. Your email address is Ali@yahoo.com. Your friend's name is Hany and his email address is Hany@yahoo.com

A job you want

Guiding words:

(doctor - helping - hard - sick)

From : ………………………

To : ………………………

Subject : ………………………

………………………

………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………

………………………………………………………………

………………………

………………………

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

teacher - night - sick - job - vet

Mona : Hello! What do you want to be?
Aya : I want to be a 1) ....
Mona : Why do you want to be a vet?
Aya : Because I love helping 2) .... animals.
Mona : What's the worst part of this 3) .... ?
Aya : It's when an animal gets sick at 4) ...., I have to get out of bed!

Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

problems - solutions - programmer - working - computer

Adel : What would you like to be when you grow up?
Ali : I'd like to be a computer 1) ....
Adel : Why would you like to have this job?
Ali : Because I enjoy solving 2) ....
Adel : Do you enjoy 3) .... with other people?
Ali : Of course, we don't always agree, but we work out the best 4) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. A .... helps sick animals.
   a) teacher b) doctor c) dentist d) vet
2. I .... tidy up the kitchen. It's messy.
   a) mustn't b) don't c) doesn't d) must
3. If an animal needs a/an ...., the room has to be clean.
   a) operation b) food c) work d) bag
4. Heba .... the bus to Cairo every morning.
   a) catch b) catches c) caught d) catching
5. .... is something that isn't alive.
   a) Living b) Non-living c) Rockpool d) Rainforest

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Unit (6)

What's the weather like?

ما حالة الطقس؟



In this unit, the student will ...

في هذه الوحدة الطالب سوف....

- listen, read, research, and write about the weather.
  يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الطقس.
- read and listen to a short story about a heat wave.
  يقرأ ويستمع لقصة قصيرة عن موجة حارة.
- use adverbs of frequency with the present simple.
  يستخدم ظروف التكرار مع زمن المضارع البسيط.
- understand a dialog about water pollution.
  يفهم حوارًا عن تلوث المياه.
- learn to distinguish the /p/ and /b/ sounds and silent letters in words.
  يتعلم التمييز بين الأصوات /p/ و /b/ والحروف الصامتة في الكلمات.
- write an account of extreme weather.
  يكتب تقريرًا عن الطقس القارص.
- research and make a leaflet about what to do in extreme weather.
  يبحث ويكتب مطوية (نشرة) عن ما يجب فعله في الطقس القارص.

Lesson (1)

THE WEATHER

Listen and say. استمع وقل.


cloud
سحابة

cloudy
مليء بالغيوم


rainbow
قوس قزح


rain
مطر


rainy
ممطر


storm
عاصفة

wind
رياح


windy
عاصف


snow
جليد


sun
الشمس


sunny
مشمس


ice
ثلج

Extra Vocabulary كلمات إضافية

climate	مناخ	news	أخبار	finally	في النهاية
Sharm El-Sheikh	شرم الشيخ	variety	تنوع	warm	دافئ
temperature	درجة الحرارة	London	لندن	dry	جاف
weather	طقس	Luxor	الأقصر	cool	منعش
normal	طبيعي	Cairo	القاهرة	degree	درجة حرارة مئوية
summer	الصيف	Alexandria	الإسكندرية	new	جديد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
rain	تمطر	rained
try	يحاول	tried
believe	يصدق	believed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
bring	يُحضر - يجلب	brought
mean	يقصد	meant
hear	يسمع	heard

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

in the day	نهارًا	go down	تنخفض
at night	ليلًا	variety of	تنوع في
by the sea	بجانب البحر	bring water from	يجلب الماء من
around 12 °C	حوالي ١٢ درجة مئوية	per year	سنويًا - كل عام
get up	ينهض	fall down	يسقط
stay at home	يبقى في المنزل	What about?	ماذا عن؟
keep cool / warm	يحافظ على برودة / دفء	a lot more	أكثر بكثير

Listen, read and role-play.

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار.

Weather woman : Good morning, everyone! I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today. It's going to be rainy in Cairo.

صباح الخير جميعًا! أحمل لكم أخبار الطقس في مصر اليوم. سيكون الجو ممطرًا في القاهرة.

Presenter : Rainy in Cairo? How often does it rain in Cairo? It's always sunny there!

ممطر في القاهرة؟ كم مرة تمطر في القاهرة؟ الجو دائمًا مشمس هناك.

Weather woman : I know, but today it's rainy.

أعلم، لكن الطقس اليوم ممطر.

Presenter : What about Sharm El-Sheikh?

ماذا عن شرم الشيخ؟

Weather woman : It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice.

الجو ليس باردًا أبدًا في شرم الشيخ، ولكن لدينا اليوم بعض الجليد.

Presenter : I don't believe it! What about Alexandria?

لا أصدق ذلك! ماذا عن الإسكندرية؟

Weather woman : It's going to be windy. That's normal - it is sometimes windy in Alexandria.

سيكون الطقس عاصفًا. هذا طبيعي - أحيانًا يكون الجو عاصفًا في الإسكندرية.

Presenter : Well, thank you. And, finally, what about Luxor?

حسنًا، شكرًا لك. وأخيرًا ماذا عن الأقصر؟

Weather woman : Oh, this is very important: Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!

أوه، هذا مهم جدًا: الأقصر ستواجه عاصفة، لذا أبق في المنزل!

Help your child list...

استمع واقرأ.

Unit (6)



Listen and read.

الطقس في مصر

The weather in Egypt

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 °C in some places!
Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 12 °C.

لدينا طقس متنوع لطيف في مصر، على الرغم من أنه عادةً جاف جدًا. فلدينا فصول صيف شديدة الحرارة وتصل درجات الحرارة أحيانًا إلى 50 درجة مئوية في بعض الأماكن! وفصول الشتاء عندنا أكثر برودة، ومن الممكن أن تنخفض درجات الحرارة إلى حوالي 12 درجة مئوية.

The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights, when the temperature can go to 0 °C. This means that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.

الصحراء لها مناخ خاص جدًا، فهي شديدة الحرارة نهارًا وشديدة البرودة ليلًا عندما تصل الحرارة إلى درجة الصفر. وهذا يعني أن الأشخاص الذين يعيشون في الصحراء يحاولون الحفاظ على البرودة نهارًا والدفء في الليل.

It doesn't often rain in Cairo – there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year. Now you can see why the Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt. It brings the water from the south. By the sea, it rains a lot more – Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!

لا تمطر كثيرًا في القاهرة - يوجد فقط حوالي 25 ملليمتر من الأمطار كل عام. إنه قليل جدًا مقارنةً بلندن: فلندن تُقدر أمطارها بـ 600 ملليمتر في العام. الآن يمكنك معرفة سبب أهمية النيل للجميع في مصر. إنه يجلب لنا الماء من جهة الجنوب. بالقرب من البحر، تمطر أكثر من ذلك بكثير - في الإسكندرية تقدر مياه الأمطار بحوالي ثمانية أضعاف ما بالقاهرة ولذلك فهي خضراء جدًا.

Did you know?

°C is short for "degrees Celsius"

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We have a nice variety of weather in ....
   a) Egypt b) China c) France d) USA
2. In Cairo, it doesn't often ....
   a) dry b) snow c) rain d) storm
3. There is only about .... mm of rain every year.
   a) 52 b) 25 c) 5 d) 15
4. It's very little when you look at .... It has about 600 mm per year.
   a) Cairo b) Aswan c) London d) Paris

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We wear coats to .... warm in winter.
   a) try b) hear c) keep d) mean
2. After it rains, we can see the .... in the sky.
   a) rainbow b) snow c) sand d) ice
3. The Nile brings the .... from the south.
   a) wind b) water c) forest d) wood
4. When the wind blows very hard, there is a ....
   a) could b) storm c) sun d) star
5. By the sea, it rains .... [illegible] lot
   a) many b) little [illegible]
6. The desert has hot days and [illegible] nights.
   a) hot b) sunn[illegible]

[illegible] child deal with such questions.
الأسئلة

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

nights - cool - desert - climate - dessert

The desert has a very special ....(1).........., with very hot days and very cold ......(2)...... The temperature can go to 0 °C. This means that the people who live in the ......(3)...... try to keep ....(4).......... in the day and warm at night.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. doesn't - often - It - in - Cairo - rain - .

....

2. is - important - Why - Nile - the - ?

....

3. yesterday - It - hot - was - sunny - and - .

....

4. The desert - a very - has - climate - special - .

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ i love Alexandria

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

The weather in Egypt

Guiding words:

(hot - cooler - dry - rain)

....

....

Lesson (2)

MY HEAT WAVE STORY

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



tornado
إعصار - زوبعة



heat wave
موجة حارة



tidal wave
موجة المد والجزر



sandstorm
عاصفة رملية



strong winds
رياح شديدة

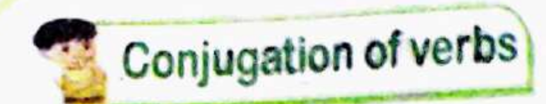


flood
فيضان

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

watermelon	بطيخ	lemons	ليمون	son	ابن
lemonade	عصير ليمون	grapes	عنب	store	متجر
weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	floor	أرضية	suddenly	فجأة
voice	صوت "شخص"	outside	بالخارج	a cry	صرخة
nearby	مجاور - قريب	worried	قلق	lady	سيدة
shade	ظل	reply	رد - يرد	quiet	هادئ



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			*Irregular verbs* أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present		**Past**	**Present**		**Past**
stay	يبقى - يمكث	stayed	become	يصبح	became
reply	يرد - يجيب	replied	lie	يستلقي	lay
knock	يطرق	knocked	know	يعرف	knew
pass	يمر - يجتاز	passed	feel	يشعر	felt

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

a bit open	مفتوح قليلًا	lying on the floor	مستلقي على الأرض
cool us down	لتقلل درجة حرارتنا	come back	يعود
come running	يأتي مسرعًا	fall down	يسقط
get ... onto a chair	يضع ... على الكرسي	At first	في البداية
in the day	في النهار	run outside	يجري خارجًا



Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

My heat wave story قصتي عن موجة حارة



The very hot summer became a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees celcius , and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water.

أصبح الصيف الحار جدًا موجة حارة. وتحدث الهوجة الحارة عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة بشكل كبيرة فوق ٤٠ درجة مئوية، ولا يستطيع أحد فعل أي شيء. لقد مكثنا في الظل وحاولنا أن نشرب الكثير من الماء.

Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the store to bu
watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool
down. We went to the store. We came back on the shady side o
the street, and past all our friends' houses.

طلبت أمي منّي أنا وصديقتي لمياء أن نذهب إلى المحل لشراء بطيخة، وعنب، وليمون لعمل عصير ليمون ليلطف من درجة حرارتنا. ذهبنا إلى المحل وعدنا من الجانب الظليل من الشارع، ومرورًا بكل منازل أصدقائنا.

Suddenly, as we were passing Mrs Sohair's house, we heard a cry. Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 70s and lives with her son, but he goes to work in the day. Lamia and I were worried and Mrs Sohair's door was a bit open, so we knocked and called 'Mrs Sohair!' At first there was no reply, then we heard a quiet voice, 'I'm here!' We went into the kitchen and she was on the floor! 'Help me!' she said.

وفجأة بينما كنا مارين بمنزل السيدة سهير، سمعنا صرخة. السيدة سهير سيدة عطوفة جدًا في السبعينات من عمرها وتعيش مع ابنها، ولكنه يذهب إلى العمل نهارًا. أنا ولمياء كنا قلقتين وكان باب السيدة سهير مفتوحًا قليلًا، لذلك طرقنا الباب ونادينا: "سيدة سهير!" في بادئ الأمر لم يكن هناك رد ثم سمعنا صوتًا هادئًا :"أنا هنا!" دخلنا إلى المطبخ وكانت مستلقية على الأرض! قالت: "ساعدوني!"

At first, we didn't know what to do, but then I ran outside and saw Mr Monib, who works nearby. 'Mr Monib, please help Mrs Sohair!' I called. Mr Monib came running. We all helped get Mrs Sohair onto a chair, then we gave her lots of water and some of our fruit. She said she went to the kitchen to get some water, but she felt ill and fell down because it was so hot. She couldn't get up. She was very happy we heard her, and we were happy we could help her!

في بادئ الأمر لم نكن نعرف ما نفعله، لكن بعد ذلك ركضت إلى خارج المنزل ورأيت السيد منيب، الذي يعمل في مكان قريب. ناديت عليه قائلة: "سيد منيب، من فضلك ساعد السيدة سهير!" جاء السيد منيب راكضًا. وساعدنا جميعًا في وضع السيدة سهير على كرسي، ثم أعطيناها كثيرًا من الماء وبعضًا من الفاكهة.

قالت أنها ذهبت إلى المطبخ لإحضار بعض الماء، لكنها شعرت بالمرض وسقطت لأن الجو كان حارًا جدًا. لم تستطع النهوض. كانت سعيدة جدًا أننا سمعناها، وكنا سعداء لأننا استطعنا مساعدتها.

Language Functions



To ask and answer about the weather.

للسؤال والإجابة عن الطقس.

1 - في زمن المضارع البسيط:

What is the weather like today? - It is + حالة الطقس



What is the weather like today?



It is hot and sunny.

2 - في زمن الماضي البسيط:

What was the weather like yesterday? - It was + حالة الطقس



What was the weather like yesterday?



It was cloudy.

To ask about your favorite weather / season.

للسؤال عن الطقس / الموسم المفضل لك.

What is your favorite + weather / season?

My favorite + weather / season + is ......

What is your favorite season?



My favorite season is summer.

Help your child ask and answer about weather.

ساعد طفلك أن يسأل ويجيب عن حال الطقس.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Yesterday, I went to the .... with my friend Heba.
   a) library b) club c) school d) store
2. We went there to buy some ....
   a) fruit b) fish c) books d) plants
3. The temperature was very ....
   a) low b) high c) fast d) slow
4. We came back on the .... side of the street.
   a) sunny b) cold c) shady d) cloudy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Summer in Egypt is ....
   a) windy b) rainy c) hot d) cloudy
2. I .... on the door.
   a) cooked b) knocked c) looked d) booked
3. I can hear my brother's ....
   a) voice b) choice c) sound d) run
4. We buy eggs and cheese at the ....
   a) hospital b) store c) zoo d) school

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

shady - temperature - outside - degrees - wave

My name is Ali. Yesterday, we had a very bad heat ....(1).......... in Cairo. The ....(2).......... was above 40 degrees Celsius. We couldn't go ....(3).......... . We had to stay at home, but we needed to buy some fruits and lemons to make lemonade. I went outside with my sister, and we walked on the ....(4).......... side of the street.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

The very hot summer became a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees Celsius, and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water. Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the store to buy watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool us down. We went to the store. We came back on the shady side of the street, and past all our friends' houses.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. They went to the ....

a) park b) school c) store d) zoo

2. The underlined word "high" is opposite of ....

a) far b) new c) low d) old

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is a heat wave? ....

4. Where did they come back? ....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ what was the weather like last weekend

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

A heat wave

Guiding words:

(temperature - high - shade - water)

....

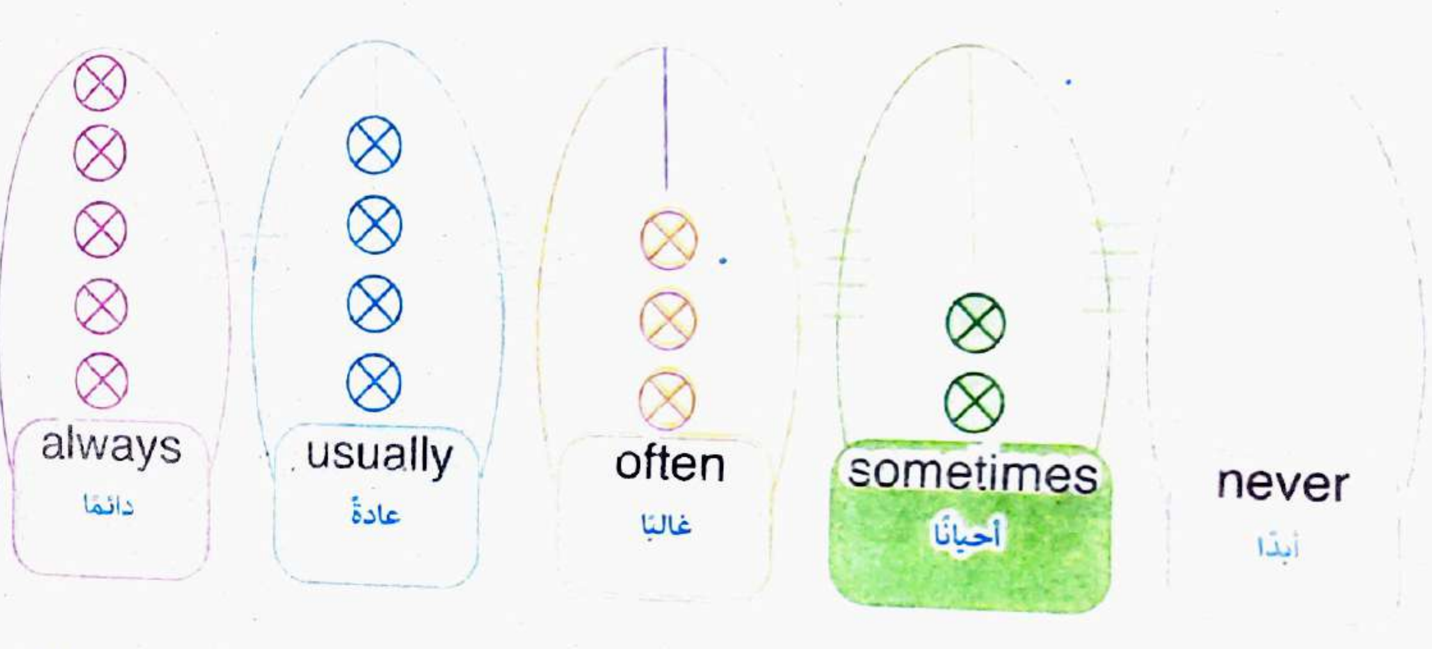
....

....

....

Language Focus

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار



- We use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often we do things.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما.

- The adverb of frequency comes before the main verb.

يأتي ظرف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي.

e.g. - I always go to the club on sunny Saturdays.
- I never go to the park in the rain.

- The adverb of frequency comes after (am/is/are).

يأتي ظرف التكرار بعد "am/is/are".

e.g. I am always in bed at 11 pm.

Help your child use adverbs of frequency.

How often ... ? كم مرة ...؟

. تستخدم للسؤال عن عدد مرات حدوث الفعل.

How often + do + (you / we / they / اسم جمع) + inf. (المصدر)?
How often + does + (he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + inf. (المصدر)?

e.g. - How often do you play tennis?

للإجابة.

Subject + ظرف التكرار + main verb ....

Or

Subject + (am / is / are) + ظرف التكرار ....

e.g. - I never play tennis. - We are never late for school.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. How .... do you visit your grandparents?
   a) many b) often c) tall d) much
2. .... often do you go to the cinema?
   a) What b) When c) How d) Where
3. I .... to the cinema on Fridays.
   a) go often b) often go c) goes often d) often goes
4. I go to school by bus every day. I .... go on foot.
   a) sometimes b) always c) never d) often
5. How often .... she make dinner?
   a) has b) does c) do d) have
6. How often .... they watch TV?
   a) does b) is c) do d) are

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

7 He .... swims. He hates swimming.

a) always b) never c) often d) usually

8 I .... in bed at 11 pm.

a) am always b) be always c) always be d) always am

9 I don't play tennis on Saturdays. I .... it on Sundays.

a) always plays b) play often c) play never d) always play

10 I .... a sandwich for lunch.

a) have always b) have c) have usually d) have often

11 Sami often .... to work by taxi.

a) goes b) go c) went d) going

12 Ali .... late. He comes on time.

a) is never b) am never c) never is d) is always

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1 She .... (always) drinks milk. She doesn't like it.

2 I usually .... (visiting) my uncle on Fridays.

3 How .... (long) do you go swimming?

- I sometimes go swimming on weekends.

4 I .... (never) watch TV at night. I watch it every day.

5 She .... (gets always) a sandwich in the morning.

6 We .... (always) go to school on Friday. It's a holiday.

7 .... (What) often do you study English?

8 Heba sometimes .... (go) to the club.

9 How ...(many) does Hend play tennis? - She never plays tennis.

10 We .... (never are) late. We wake up very early.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



PRONUNCIATION

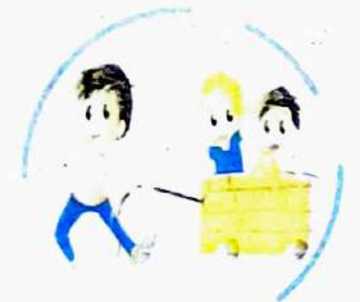
Listen and repea .

استمع و ردد.

/p/



peach
خوخ



pull
يسحب - يجر



pea
بسلة / بازلاء



pear
كمثرى



beach
شاطئ



bull
ثور



bee
نحلة



bear
دُب

Help your child distinguish between the / /and

ساعد طفلك ان يميز بين ال

اقرأ وتعلم.

Read and learn.

We make the sounds /p/ and /b/ at the front of our mouths, by pressing our lips together. But they are different.

ننطق الأصوات /p/ و /b/ من مقدمة أفواهنا، بالضغط على شفاهنا معًا. لكنهم مختلفون.

/p/ "unvoiced sound"	/b/ "voiced sound"
The air comes out of our mouths when we say it. الهواء يخرج من أفواهنا عندما نقوله.	The vocal cords vibrate when we say it. تهتز الأحبال الصوتية عندما نقوله.
1. Put a piece of paper in front of your mouth. ضع قطعة من الورق أمام فمك.	1. Put a piece of paper in front of your mouth. ضع قطعة من الورق أمام فمك
2. Say the sound /p/ قل صوت /p/.	2. Say the sound /b/ قل صوت /b/.
The paper moves. تتحرك الورقة.	The paper doesn't move. لا تتحرك الورقة.

Silent letters الحروف الصامتة

In English there are some words with silent letters – letters we don't pronounce.

في اللغة الانجليزية يوجد بعض الكلمات التي بها حروف صامتة (لا ننطقها).



clim(b)
يتسلق

t(w)o
اثنان



(h)our
ساعة (٦٠ دقيقة)



i(s)land
جزيرة

Help your child identify silent letters in words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الحروف الصامتة في الكلمات.

knife	write	lamb	wrist
سكين	يكتب	حَمَل - خروف صغير	رسغ

knee	castle	sign
رُكبة	قلعة	لافتة

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ

He was climbing on an island with his two cats. He fell onto a beach and hurt his wrist. But he was very lucky - he had a knife, so he could make a bandage and write a message in the sand. Two hours later, people came to save him!

كان يتسلق على جزيرة مع قطتين. سقط على الشاطئ وأصاب رسغه. لكنه كان محظوظا جدا-كان لديه سكين ، لذلك صنع ضمادة وكتب رسالة في الرمال. بعد ساعتين ، جاء الناس لإنقاذه!



1 Listen and circle the word you hear.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي تسمعها.

1. bee - pea
2. beach - peach
3. bear - pear
4. bull - pull

Help your child identify silent letters in words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على الحروف الصامتة في الكلمات.

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

hours - knife - wrist

Ali was climbing on an island with his two cats. He fell onto a beach and hurt his ....(1).............. . But he was very lucky. He had a ....(2).............. so he could make a bandage and write a message in the sand. Two ....(3).............. later, people came to save him!

3 Listen and tick (✓) the words with silent letter.

استمع وضع علامة (✓) أمام الكلمات التي بها حرف صامت.

1. wrist
2. knife
3. lamp
4. pen
5. pea
6. island

4 Circle the words that start with "b" in red. Circle the words that start with 'p' in green. Then look and match.

a 



b 

c 

1. pear
2. beach
3. bear
4. bull
5. pull
6. peach



d 

e 

f 

Lessons (4&5)

WRITING & PROJECT

Vocabulary

frightening	مرعب / مخيف	cool wind	رياح باردة
electric shock	صدمة كهربائية	heavy rain	أمطار غزيرة
extreme weather	طقس شديد	floods	فيضانات
air-conditioning	تكييف	lightning	برق
shade	ظل	electric wires	أسلاك كهربائية
extreme heat	حرارة شديدة	candle	شمعة
extreme cold	برد شديد (قارص)	power cut	انقطاع الكهرباء
tornadoes	أعاصير - زوابع	leaflet	نشرة - مطوية
safe × unsafe	آمن × غير آمن	torch	كشاف
inside × outside	بالداخل × بالخارج	dark	مظلم - داكن



Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs			*Irregular verbs*		
Present		**Past**	**Present**		**Past**
twist	يلتوي - يلوي	twisted	spend	يقضي (وقت)	spent
contact	يتصل	contacted	shut	يغلق	shut
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	hurt	يؤذي - يضر	hurt
protect	يحمي	protected	strike	يضرب	struck



Important expressions and prepositions

bits of houses	أجزاء من المنازل	get in	يدخل
find out	يكتشف/يعرف	turn off	يطفئ
look out of	ينظر من	get dark	تصبح مظلمة

Read about extreme weather in England.

اقرأ عن حالة الطقس الشديد (القارص) في إنجلترا.

I was at school with my classmates. Then it started to get dark. We went outside. Then I saw the tornado and it was very frightening. It was a very big, wide, black cloud. As it came near us, it was getting bigger and it was twisting around. We could see things in it, like doors and bits of houses! When it was closer, it got even wider and darker. The next day, we found out that the tornado hurt a lot of people, and destroyed many homes and other buildings.

لقد كنت في المدرسة مع زملائي في الفصل، ثم بدأ يحل الظلام. ذهبنا للخارج ثم رأيت الإعصار وكان مخيفًا للغاية. حيث أنه كان مثل سحابة سوداء كبيرة وعريضة. عندما اقترب منا الإعصار كان يكبر أكثر وكان يلتف حولنا. كان يمكننا أن نرى أشياء داخله، مثل الأبواب وأجزاء من المنازل! عندما اقترب منا، أصبح أكثر اتساعًا وأكثر ظلامًا. في اليوم التالي، اكتشفنا أن الإعصار أصاب الكثير من الناس، ودمر العديد من المنازل والمباني الأخرى.

Read about another extreme weather event.

اقرأ عن حالة طقس شديد أخرى.

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There were other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert!

في يوم من الأيام كنت أقود سيارة أنا وعائلتي عبر الصحراء لزيارة أولاد عمي. وبعد ٢٠ دقيقة نظرت من النافذة ورأيت عاصفة رملية. وسرعان ما كان هناك الكثير من الرمال في الجو خارج السيارة وأصبح من الصعب الرؤية. أغلقنا كل النوافذ ولكن الظلام غطى كل شيء. وكان هناك سيارات أخرى على الطريق وتساءلت هل سيصطدمون بنا ؟ لقد كنت خائفًا للغاية. قام أبي بإبعاد السيارة عن الطريق وتوقفنا. ولم نرى أي سيارات أخرى على الطريق ولكن كانت العاصفة الرملية تتحرك ببطء شديد. ثم فجأة ابتعدت. ورأينا الشمس مرة أخرى وقدنا السيارة عبر الصحراء.

Help your child ...

Unit (6)

Keeping safe in extreme heat

الحفاظ على سلامتك في الحرارة الشديدة

1. Try to spend time in cool buildings with air-conditioning.
حاول قضاء وقت في المباني الباردة المزودة بتكييف.
2. Drink lots of water, even if you don't feel thirsty.
اشرب كثيرًا من الماء حتى لو لم تشعر بالعطش.
3. Open the windows when there's a cool wind.
افتح النوافذ عند وجود هواء بارد.
4. Wear light, cool clothing.
ارتدي ملابس خفيفة فاتحة اللون.
5. Eat small, light meals.
تناول وجبات صغيرة وخفيفة.
6. Don't go outside. If you must go outside, stay in the shade.
لا تخرج. إذا كان يجب عليك الخروج، ابق في الظل.

Keeping safe in a sandstorm

الحفاظ على سلامتك في العاصفة الرملية

1. Cover your head and face as much as possible.
غط وجهك ورأسك بقدر المستطاع.
2. If you're at home, make sure your windows are shut so no sand can get in.
إذا كنت في المنزل تأكد من أن النوافذ مغلقة حتى لا تدخل الرمال.
3. Wear a scarf to protect your face.
ارتدي وشاحًا لتحمي وجهك.
4. Stay inside so the sand can't get in your mouth.
ابق بالداخل حتى لا تدخل الرمال في فمك.
5. If you're driving, try to get to the side of the road so you can stop your car.
إذا كنت تقود، حاول أن تصل إلى جانب الطريق حتى توقف سيارتك.
6. Turn off air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in.
قم بإطفاء التكييف حتى تمنع دخول الرمال.

Project A leaflet نشرة / مطوية

How to keep safe in a storm

كيف تحافظ على سلامتك في عاصفة

What might happen in a storm?

ماذا يمكن أن يحدث خلال العاصفة؟

- There might be very strong winds.

قد تكون هناك رياح قوية جدًا.

- There might be heavy rain and lightning.

قد تكون هناك أمطار غزيرة وبرق.

- It might not be safe to go outside – electric wires could fall.

قد لا يكون الخروج آمنًا لاحتمال سقوط الأسلاك الكهربائية.

- There might be a power cut.

قد يحدث انقطاع الكهرباء.

- People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help.

قد يحتاج الناس في الشوارع والمنازل أو السيارات إلى مساعدتك.





How can you protect yourself?

كيف تحمي نفسك؟

- Stay inside and keep dry.

ابق بالداخل وحافظ على جفافك.

- Make sure you have candles and torches – there might be a power cut.

تأكد من وجود شموع ومصابيح - فقد يحدث انقطاع التيار الكهربائي.

- Contact your friends and family to check they are safe.

قم بالاتصال بأصدقائك وعائلتك للتحقق من سلامتهم.

- Don't go anywhere by train – this could be unsafe.

لا تذهب لأي مكان بالقطار - يمكن أن يكون هذا غير آمن.

- Help anyone who is afraid.

ساعد أي شخص يشعر بالخوف.

- Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes.

لا تقف تحت الأشجار في حالة حدوث برق.

- Don't stand near wires-they could fall and give you an electric shock.

لا تقف بالقرب من الأسلاك - فقد تسقط وتسبب لك صدمة كهربية.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I was at school with my ....
   a) classmates b) parents c) cousins d) sisters
2. Then it started to get ....
   a) heavy b) dark c) cold d) light
3. We went ....
   a) inside b) in school c) outside d) outlook
4. I saw the tornado and it was very ....
   a) safe b) happy c) easy d) frightening

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Wear a .... to protect your face in a sandstorm.
   a) dress b) gloves c) socks d) scarf
2. In extreme heat, you should wear .... cool clothes.
   a) heavy b) strong c) light d) warm
3. In a sandstorm, stay .... so the sand can't get in your mouth.
   a) inside b) outside c) outdoors d) outdoor
4. Turn .... air-conditioning to stop the sand coming in.
   a) on b) in c) off d) for

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

wind - drink - shade - thirsty - follow

There are some tips you should follow to be safe in extreme heat. You should ....(1).......... lots of water, even if you don't feel ....(2).......... Open the windows when there's a cool ....(3).......... Don't go outside. If you must go outside, stay in the ....(4)..........

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There were other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, and the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert!

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. We saw the .... again and drove through the desert.
   a) sun b) moon c) star d) planet
2. The underlined word "difficult" is opposite of ....
   a) hard b) easy c) short d) young

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What happened while they were driving? ....
4. Did they see any more cars on the road? ....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ wear a scarf to protect your face

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

keeping safe in extreme heat

Guiding words:

(drink - open - cool - clothing- wear)

....

....

....

Review on Unit (6)


cloud


ice


rain


sunny


rainy


tornado


windy


cloudy


sandstorm


tidal wave


heat wave


sun


snow


rainbow

strong winds


flood

What's the weather like?

/p/

pull pear peach pea

/b/

bull bear beach bee

Silent letters

climb island two

knife hour write

Frequency adverbs

	100%
always	70%
usually	50%
often	25%
sometimes	0%
never	

How often do you ... ?

- I often sit on our balcony on hot nights.
- I'm always in bed at 11 pm.

Writing Corner

* **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.** اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

The weather in Egypt

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. Although it is usually very dry, we have hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 °C in some places. Our winters are cooler. The desert is very hot in the day and very cold at night.

Weekends

I love the weekends. I usually get up early at 7:00 in the morning. I sometimes take a shower and read a book. I help my mom make breakfast. In the afternoon, I always play tennis with my brother. We have a nice time together.

How to keep safe in extreme heat

In extreme heat, we should drink lots of water, even if we don't feel thirsty. We should open the windows when there's a cool wind. We should wear light, cool clothing. We should try to spend time in cool buildings with air-conditioning. We shouldn't go outside in hot weather.

Keeping safe in a storm

To keep safe in a storm, you must cover your head and face. If you are at home, shut all the windows so no sand can get in. Stay inside and don't go out. If you must go out, stay in the shade. You mustn't stand under trees or near electric wires.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات.

Help your child write paragraphs.

Dictation on Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

Word	Meaning
	سحابة
	جليد
	قوس قزح
	مطر
	رياح
	عاصفة

Word	Meaning
	ملئ بالغيوم
	درجة الحرارة
	ثلج
	مناخ
	طقس
	شمس

Lesson (2)

Word	Meaning
	موجة المد والجزر
	موجة حارة
	إعصار - زوبعة
	فيضان
	رياح شديدةُ
	عاصفة رملية

Word	Meaning
	دائمًا
	عادةً
	غالبًا
	أحيانًا
	أبدًا
	بالخارج

Lesson (3)

Word	Meaning
	خوخ
	يسحب - يجر
	بسلة
	كمثرى

Word	Meaning
	شاطئ
	ثور
	نحلة
	دُب

Lessons (4 & 5)

Word	Meaning
	كشاف
	طقس شديد
	مرعب

Word	Meaning
	أسلاك كهربائية
	انقطاع الكهرباء
	ظل

Help your child dictate these words. ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (5)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The tornado is very ....
   a) safe b) good c) dangerous d) happy
2. The tornado is a very big, wide, black ....
   a) cloud b) star c) sun d) wind
3. The tornado can .... many homes.
   a) clean b) build c) paint d) destroy
4. The tornado can .... a lot of people.
   a) play b) hurt c) enjoy d) keep

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. When the wind blows very hard, there is a/an ....
   a) storm b) sun c) cloud d) ice
2. In the desert, people try to keep .... at night.
   a) cold b) warm c) thirsty d) hungry
3. A .... is when the temperature goes very high.
   a) flood b) tornado c) storm d) heat wave
4. It's not safe to touch the ....
   a) electric wires b) scarf c) boots d) leaflet

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

protect - inside - sand - face - driving

When there's a sandstorm, wear a scarf to protect your face. If you're at home, make sure your windows are shut so no ......(1)...... can get in. Cover your head and ......(2)...... as much as possible. so the sand can't get in your mouth. If you're ......(3)...... Stay ......(4)......, try to get to the side of the road so you can stop your car.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 °C in some places! Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 12 °C. The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights, when the temperature can go to 0 °C. This means that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. The text is about the weather in ....
   a) Egypt b) China c) India d) America
2. The underlined word "variety" means ....
   a) same b) different c) like d) good

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the weather like in the desert? ....
4. Does the desert have a special climate?...

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. often - go - I - the - to - cinema - .
2. you - often - How - do - tennis - play - ?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Hend ....(always) goes swimming. She can't swim.
2. How ....(fast) does it rain in the desert? - It never rains in the desert.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

⇨ omar stayed at home last weekend

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة.

How to keep safe in extreme heat

Guiding words:

(extreme - drink - windows - cool clothing - air-conditioning)

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

driving - shade - cool - do - outside

Hany : How can I keep safe in extreme heat?
Samy : Don't go 1) ....
Hany : What should I 2) .... if I have to go outside?
Samy : Stay in the 3) ....
Hany : What about spending time in 4) .... buildings with air-conditioning.
Samy : That's great!

Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

اقرأ وأكمل الحوار بكلمات من المربع

play - often - do - usually - brother

Hend : How 1) .... do you play tennis, Hend?
Rania : I always 2) .... tennis.
Hend : Who 3) .... you play with?
Rania : I usually play with my 4) ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. In winter, it's usually cold and ....
   a) sunny b) rainy c) hot d) heat
2. After it rains, we can see the .... in the sky.
   a) rainbow b) ice c) sand d) moon
3. Don't go .... if there's a sandstorm.
   a) inside b) indoor c) outside d) in
4. Mona doesn't like music. She .... listens to music.
   a) always b) usually c) never d) sometimes
5. How often .... you go to the library?
   a) does b) have c) has d) do

Help your child deal with such questions

Review 2

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Aesop was a very famous writer in Ancient Greece. He wrote stories called 'fables' – they always had a moral. A moral teaches us to be kind and helpful to other people. An example of a moral is: Be kind and patient with people.

كان إيسوب كاتباً مشهورًا في اليونان القديمة. كتب قصصًا تسمي (خرافات إيسوب). كانت تحتوي دائمًا علي درس أخلاقي. هذا الدرس الأخلاقي يعلمنا أن نكون طيبين ومتعاونين مع الآخرين. مثال للدرس الأخلاقي: كن طيبًا (عطوفًا) وصبورًا مع الناس.

Read the fable.

اقرأ الأسطورة.

The North Wind was trying to make the Sun angry. "I'm very strong," he said, "I'm stronger than you." He looked down and blew. He knocked over some trees on a path. "I'm not so sure you're stronger than me," replied the Sun, smiling.

كانت "ريح الشمال" تحاول أن تجعل "الشمس" غاضبة. و قالت: "أنا قوي جداً - أنا أقوى منك". نظر لأسفل ونفخ الريح و أسقط بعض الأشجار في الطريق. ردت "الشمس" مبتسمة أنا لست متأكدًا أنك أقوي مني".

At that moment, a man wearing a coat walked along the road. The Sun said to the Wind, "OK, let's see. Who can make the man take off his coat?" "Hmm," the Wind said. "Of course I'm going to win." He looked down at the traveler and he blew and blew. The man felt the Wind and he felt cold. He pulled his coat tighter around him. He didn't let the Wind blow off his coat. The Wind was angry, but he was tired and stopped.

في تلك اللحظة كان رجلا يرتدى معطفاً يمشي علي امتداد الطريق. قالت الشمس للريح. "وهو كذلك، دعنا نرى. من يستطيع أن يجعل الرجل يخلع معطفه؟" قالت الريح "همم بالطبع أنا سأفوز". نظرت لأسفل علي المسافر ثم هبت وهبت. شعر الرجل بالريح وشعر بالبرد. وشد معطفه بشدة حوله. لم يسمح للرياح أن تعصف بمعطفه. كانت الريح غاضبةً ولكنها تعبت وتوقفت.

Then the Sun came out and began to shine. "Oh dear!" said the man "It's so hot!." He got so hot, he took off his coat. "That's better," he said. The Sun looked at the North Wind and said, "I won." The North Wind was angry and blew away!

ثم خرجت "الشمس" وبدأت تسطع قال الرجل «يا الهي» «الجو حار جداً» وشعر بالحر الشديد و خلع معطفه ثم قال «هذا أفضل». نظرت "الشمس" لريح الشمال وقالت لقد فزت. كانت ريح الشمال غاضبة وهبت بعيدًا!.

Help your child read one of Aesop's fables.

ساعد طفلك ان يقرا احدى قصص ايسوب.

Activities on Review (2)

مصر ... في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Nada is on Elephantine ....
   a) Park b) Island c) Lake d) Sea
2. Elephantine Island is in ....
   a) Fayoum b) Cairo c) Aswan d) Giza
3. Nada was traveling to the island with her ....
   a) family b) friends c) sisters d) mother
4. Elephantine Island is the .... part of Aswan.
   a) oldest b) longest c) fastest d) nearest

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. This calendar is from the .... of Thutmose III.
   a) reign b) house c) week d) parents
2. Tourists pay for rooms in .... at night.
   a) caves b) hotels c) schools d) parks
3. Ancient Egyptians used .... to write every thing down.
   a) Arabic b) English c) hieroglyphs d) French
4. The tornado scares me. It's ....
   a) nice b) good c) wonderful d) frightening

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بكلمات من المربع:

Ecosystems - natural - difficult - Living - rainforest

Everything in the natural world is connected. ....(1)......... can be small, like a rockpool. They also can be big, like the Amazon ....(2)......... . ...(3)......... and non-Living things work together to make an ecosystem. There are lots of ....(4)......... ecosystems.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good, too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Fewer people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

A) Choose the correct answer.

1. Ancient Egyptians craftsmen were very ....
   a) good b) bad c) sad d) unhappy
2. The underlined word "expensive" is the opposite of ....
   a) cheap b) good c) fat d) tall

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What did scribes spend many years learning? ....
4. What did craftsmen make? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. school - was - I - at - my - with - classmates - .
2. as - people - worked - scribes - Fewer - .

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات التي بين الأقواس.

1. Hend ....(always) walks to school. She always goes by car.
2. Ali was ....(watch) TV at 10 pm yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم على الآتي:

- my name's rania.

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words.

اكتب فقرة من (30) كلمة

The job you want to do

Guiding words:

(fisherman - boat - sea - fish)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Project

Climate change and how it affects Egypt

تغير المناخ وكيف يؤثر على مصر

What is climate change?



a glacier melting



a drought



a flood

Climate change is the long-term shift in weather patterns. It can be caused naturally by volcanoes. However, at the moment, humans are causing climate change by releasing lots of pollution. The temperature is rising and the glaciers are melting. This means the sea levels are rising, too. When the sea gets higher, we get floods. When the temperature rises, we get droughts because the water evaporates.

تغير المناخ هو التغير طويل المدى في أنماط الطقس. يمكن أن يكون سببه ثوران البراكين بشكل طبيعي. ومع ذلك، في الوقت الحالي، يتسبب البشر في تغير المناخ من خلال إحداث الكثير من التلوث. ترتفع درجة الحرارة وتذوب الأنهار الجليدية. وهذا يعني أن مستويات سطح البحر ترتفع أيضا. عندما يرتفع مستوى سطح البحر، تحدث الفيضانات. عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة، يحدث الجفاف لأن الماء يتبخر.

Climate change might cause problems to agriculture. There might not be enough water to grow crops. One solution to drought is to use soil-less farming. See the photo below. In this way, you grow plants without using soil. Crops get the right amount of water and nutrients in specific greenhouses. And so you save water and time.

قد يتسبب تغير المناخ في مشاكل الزراعة. فقد لا يكون هناك مياه كافية لزراعة المحاصيل. أحد الحلول لمشكلة الجفاف هو أن نستخدم الزراعة بدون التربة. انظر الصورة أدناه: بهذه الطريقة أنت تزرع النباتات بدون التربة. تحصل المحاصيل على الكمية المناسبة للماء والمواد المغذية في الصوبات الزراعية المخصصة. وبذلك يمكنك توفير الماء والوقت.



soil-less agriculture in Egypt

Help your child read a project about climate change.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ مشروع عن تغير المناخ.

Listening Texts

Unit (1)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

My favorite food is chocolate. But it is unhealthy to eat a lot. So I eat a little. My friend Fareeda likes chicken and fish.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

I'm Heba. I have my breakfast with my family. I have yogurt and fruit salad. In the afternoon, my mom and I go to the market. We buy chicken, burger, vegetables and rice for lunch. My sister and I always help our mom in the kitchen.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Jack was a kind boy. He met an old man and bought his special beans to help him. The next morning, he found that the beans grew into a giant stalk. He climbed the stalk and found a hen in a cage.

Activities On Unit (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

My favorite food is mango. I like to eat it. It is a healthy food. We have a mango tree in the garden. My father sometimes sells mangoes at the market.

Unit (2)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Anas and Seif are talking about sports. Anas loves squash. Anas is bad at playing tennis but he is good at football. Seif is good at playing tennis, but he's bad at playing handball.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Hi!, I'm Dalia. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball. Aser is my brother. He is 11 years old. He's good at playing tennis but he's bad at helping me in the kitchen!

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

I'm Ola. I play football. I love kicking the ball on the pitch. I wear my football boots. My friend Hana plays tennis. She uses the rackets and runs fast on the court.

Lessons (4&5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993.She won a bronze medal in Tokyo 2021. She is a very kind person.

Activities On Unit (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Adel and Hana like sports. Adel likes karate as he can do lots of moves. He also loves kung fu because he likes when he does high kicks. Hana likes to swim. She goes to swimming pool on Friday. She often puts on her swimming goggles to protect her eyes.

Unit (3)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

I'm Noha. I'll pack my suitcase for our holiday tomorrow. I'm excited. I need to pack my green T-shirt. I won't need a coat, but I should take my sunglasses. I'll pack my purple sweater. It's cool at night.



Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Marwa is wearing a costume. Marwa looks like a princess. Marwa is wearing a spotted dress. Marwa has white gloves on her hands.

Activities On Unit (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Mona goes to the party with her sister. Mona is wearing as a princess. She has white gloves on her hands. She has a crown on her head. She is wearing a striped dress.

Review (1) On Units (1 - 3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

I'm Hana. I like many kinds of fruit. My favorite fruit is mango. We have a mango tree in our garden. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with it. Mango is known as the king of fruits. It's also the national fruit of India. Mango grows during the summer season.

Unit (4)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Eman visited Elephantine Island last month. Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. The island is full of history and amazing sights. You can visit the Aswan Museum.

Activities On Unit (4)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

My name is Sara. My favorite place in Egypt is the Elephantine Island in Aswan. It's the most fantastic place. It is a very beautiful and calm place. The Island is full of history.

Unit (5)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a job. But most people worked as farmers. They worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. Scribes could write everything down. They kept records and lists of important things.

Lesson (3)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

The grasshopper was lazy. He thought work is boring. Now, it's winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any. The ant wasn't lazy. She worked and now she has food.

Activities On Unit (5)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

I'm Hana and I'm a vet. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured, I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people bring their animals to me.

Unit (6)

Lesson (1)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. In Cairo, it doesn't often rain; there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year.

Lesson (2)

1) Listen and choose the correct answer.

Yesterday, I went to the store with my friend Heba. We went there to buy some fruit. The temperature was very high. It was